

Conferențiar univ. dr. Liana Popescu

# LIMBA ENGLEZĂ PENTRU ANUL I

## CUVÂNT ÎNAINTE

Lucrarea “**Limba engleză pentru anul I**” reprezintă rezultatul interesului autoarei pentru modernizarea și creșterea eficienței comunicării în limba engleză și își propune dezvoltarea unor strategii care să conducă la autonomia cursanților în învățare, prin conștientizarea nevoilor personale, efort individual și autoevaluare permanentă.

Cartea se adresează în special studenților din anul I ai Facultății de Horticultură. Cursul pentru studenții la forma de învățământ deschis la distanță, cu un nivel **mediu de cunoaștere a limbii engleze**, care se pregătesc în domeniul horticulturii ce vor fi obligați să folosească acest limbaj în diverse activități caracteristice profesiei lor.

Tematica abordată oferă ocazia de a discuta subiecte variate și extrem de actuale pornind de la concepte economice de bază.

Subiectele sunt prezentate într-o manieră accesibilă și sunt susținute de studii de caz adecvate temei. Nu lipsesc elementele de vocabular și cele de gramatică – prezentate în secțiuni care conțin explicații teoretice și exerciții.

Opțiunea metodologică ce a stat la baza elaborării lucrării de față stimulează atât creativitatea profesorului cât și a studentului, facilitând dezvoltarea abilităților de comunicare interpersonală prin activități variate și interesante.

Așteptăm reacțiile și sugestiile dumneavoastră, fiind conștienți de faptul că posibilele neajunsuri se pot corecta printr-un dialog permanent între autoare și utilizatori.

Autoarea

## **Contents:**

Basics

Lesson I

Lesson II

Lesson III

Lesson IV

Lesson V

Lesson VI

Lesson VII

Lesson VIII

Lesson IX

Lesson X

Lesson XI

Lesson XII

Lesson XIII

Lesson XIV

Grammar

Annexes

References

## BASICS

### Alphabet:

**A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, W, X, Y, Z.**

### Vowels:

A can have three different sounds within words		
Here "a,, has a broad sound similar to "aw" as in "law"	Here "a" has a long sound similar to "a" as in "day"	Here "a" has a short sound similar to the sound in "bat"
Father All Fall Mall Tall	Plate Date Fate Rate (rată/preț/tarif/curs) Mate	Family Dance Rather Man Tan (bronz-al pielii/a argăsi)

E can have three different sounds within words		
Here "e,, has a long sound similar to "ee" as in "meet"	Here "e" has a short sound similar to the sound in "bet"	Here "e" has a sound similar to the "ir" or "ur" sounds in "stir" and "fur"
Me Theme We Be Breed	Red Bed Mess (a murdări/ dezordine) Men	Her Mother Sister Rather Bitter

I has two different sounds within words	
Here "i" has a short sound	Here "i" has a long sound similar to "ie" or "y" sounds in "pie" and "sky"
Sit (sit down) Hit Slim Tin ( tablă/cutie de conservă) Flip (a lovi ușor/bobârnac)	Ice Nice Kind Mime ( a mima/mim, actor de panto- mimă) Line

O has three different sounds within words		
Here "o,, has a long sound	Here "o" has a short sound	Here "o" has a broad sound similar to "au" in "taught"

Cone (con-de-brad) Home Bone Dome (cupolă, boltă/ acoperiș) Hone (a ascuți)	Come Some None Won (past,past p. of win) Glove	Hot Cot (pătuț/căsuță/cabană) Plot Rot (a putrezi, a zace- închis) Got (past of get)
--	--	---

U has two different sounds within words	
Here "u" has a short sound	Here "u" has a long sound
Fun Run Sun Bun (chec cu stafide/urechilă-în basm) Album	Use University Human Punitive (aspru/sever) Tune (acord, armonie/dispoziție-bună)

### Vowels Combos

AI	AU
The sound of this vowels combos resembles the long "a" sound in "sane" and "male"	This vowel combo usually precedes "ght"
Rain Sail Wait Mail Fail	Daughter Caught Haughty (arogant) Taught (past teach)

EA	EE
Here the "ea" combo has a short sound similar to the "e" in "let"; note an exception: the long "a" sound in "great,,	Here the "ee" combo has a long sound similar to "ea" in "treat";
Dead Head Read (past tense and past participle) Great	Read (infinitive) Seat Leave Meat Treat Lead
	Feet Sheet Heel Meet Knee

<b>OA</b>	<b>OO</b>
Another sound for "oa" can be found in "broad" and approximates the sound "aw" in "raw"	The sound of the combo "oo" and the "u" sound in "tune" and "dune" are the same
Goal Load Road Moat (șanț) Abroad	Food Moon Soon Cool Tool

<b>OI</b>	<b>OY</b>
The "oi" and "oy" combos sound the same	
Poison Noise Soil	Toy Boy Joy Alloy

<b>OU</b>		
In most cases, the combo "ou" has a sound similar to "ow" in "how" or "now"	Here the "ou" combo in front of "gh" has the "uff" sound in "cuff"	<b>1.</b> Here the "ou" combo in front of "gh" has the "ow" sound in "how" or "now"
House Hour Foul Mouse	Enough Rough Tough	Bough (ramură) <b>2.</b> Here the "ou" combo in front of "gh" has the long "o" sound in "toe" Dough (cocă, aluat) <b>3.</b> Here the "ou" combo in front of "gh" has a broad similar sound to "au" in "taught" Cough ( a tuși) <b>4.</b> Here the "ou" combo in front of "gh" has the long "oo" sound in "tool" Through

## Consonants

<b>B</b>		<b>C</b>
"b," has the same sound wherever it occurs in a word	Note the hard "c" or "k" sound in front of a consonant or the vowels "a", "o", and "u"	Note the soft "c" or "s" sound in front of the vowels "e" and "i"
Baby Bear Bull Big Robber	Cat Crocodile Cut Coward Car	Cider Ice Nice Mice
<b>D</b>		<b>F</b>
"d" has the same sound wherever it occurs in a word		"f" has the same sound wherever it occurs in a word
Duck Dirt Add Could Rude		Foot Feed Funnel (pâlnie) Fan

<b>G</b>		<b>H</b>
Note the hard sound in front of a consonant or the vowels "a", "o" and "u", and sometimes "e,"	Note, in certain cases the soft "g" sound front of an "e", "i" and "y", similar to "j" in "jam,,"	With few exceptions, "h" is pronounced at the beginning of a word
Gas Get Gun Goose (gâscă) Green	Page Magic Gym Gin Gem	Hat Hammock (hamac) Hear High Honey

<b>J</b>	<b>K</b>	<b>L</b>
"j" has the same sound as the soft "g" in words like <i>gym</i> and <i>gem</i>	"k" has the same sound as the hard "c" in words like <i>card</i> and <i>court</i>	When "l" is followed by a final consonant like "d" or "m", it has a softer, almost silent, sound:

		"calm"
Jail Job Major Jump	Karate Kangaroo Kilo Kurdish	Lamb Slow Lion Would Calm

<b>M</b>	<b>N</b>	<b>P</b>
"m", "n" and "p" have the same sound wherever they occur in a word		
Mad Microscope Melon (pepene) Motor Musician	Napa Nose Negative Number Night	Part Pass Pear Pet Apple

<b>Q</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>S</b>
As in most languages "q" is always followed by a "u"; when pronounced together, they sound like "kw"	The "r" in English is pronounced much closer to the front of mouth than in other languages	In most cases, "s" sound the same wherever it occurs in a word
Queen Quit Quest Quota (cotă, procentaj) Question	Rich Right Rent Marble Laboratory	Silk Sad Sold Nose Goose
<b>T</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>W</b>
1. In most cases "t" sounds the same wherever it occurs in a word	"v,, sounds the same wherever it occurs in a word	"w" sounds the same wherever it occurs in a word, except when it comes last and is preceded by a vowel-law, few
Tail Telegram Tell  2. when "t" is followed by an "ion" as in "nation" or "station" it has an "sh" sound Nation	Vast Very Victory Television Avenue (bulevard, alee cu pomi către o casă)	Wine War Water Wool

Station		
---------	--	--

<b>X</b>	<b>Y</b>	<b>Z</b>
At the beginning of a word "x" has a "z" sound: "xylophone"	Remember that "y" can be both a consonant and a vowel in English	"z" is normally found in first positions in English
Taxi Sixth Mix Mexico	Year You Young Yellow	Zoo Zebra Zero Zone

### Consonants Combos

<b>CH</b>	<b>GH</b>
This consonant combo has the same sound at the beginning or end of a word	"gh" at the end of a word can have either the sound "f" or be silent
Inch (1 inch=2.54 cm) Chocolate Chew (a mesteca) Chewing gum	Enough Laugh Through Dough (aluat)

<b>KN</b>	<b>NG</b>	
The "k" is silent in this consonant combo	This combo is quite common in English	When followed by an "e" the "g,, in the consonant combo has a soft "j" sound
Knee Knife Knight Doorknob Know	Bring Engine King Song Anger	Danger Angel Change Range Strange

<b>PH</b>	<b>PS</b>
The "ph" combo has the sound "f,,	The "p,, is silent in the consonant combo
Pharmacy Phase Philosophy Photo Telephone	Psyche Psychiatrist Psychology Psychologist Psychic

SC		SH
The "c" in this combination is pronounced hard as a "k" sound before an "a", "o,, or "u"	The "c,, in this combination is pronounced soft as a "s" sound before an "i" or "e"	The "sh" combo sounds the same at the beginning or end of a word.
Scare Score Scum (scursură)	Scent (mireasmă) Scene Science Sceptre Scissors	Shampoo Share Wish Show Shut

TH	TW
"th" can have either a voiced, gliding sound, as in than or voiceless sound, as in "thin"	In this consonant combo, both the "t" and "w" work together to produce the sound; note the exception "two"
Than That The Thin Theatre	Twelve Twenty Twice Twist

WH	WR
In this consonant combo, both the "w" and "h" work together to produce the sound; note the exception "who"	The "w" is silent in the consonant combo
What When Where Which Why	Write Wrist ( încheietura mâinii) Wreck (epavă, naufragiu) Wrong

### Basic Vocabulary

#### Numbers

0-zero	11-eleven	22-twenty-two	60-sixty
1-one	12-twelve	23-twenty-three	70-seventy
2-two	13- <b>thirteen</b>	30-thirty	80-eighty
3-three	14-fourteen	31-thirty-one	90-ninety
4-four	15-fifteen	32-thirty-two	100-one hundred
5-five	16-sixteen	33-thirty-three	200-two hundred
6-six	17-seventeen	34-thirty-four	300-three hundred
7-seven	18-eighteen	40-forty	400-four hundred

8-eight	19-nineteen	41-forty-one	500-five hundred
9-nine	20-twenty	50-fifty	600-six hundred
10-ten	21-twenty-one	51-fifty-one	1000-one thousand

## TIME

(What time is it?)

It's one o'clock.	It's quarter to five.
It's two o'clock.	It's ten after six.
It's three fifteen. It's quarter past three.	It's twenty to seven.
It's four thirty. It's half past four.	It's noon/midnight.

## CALENDAR






Days of the Week	Months of the Year	Seasons
Monday (luni)	January	Spring (primăvară)
Tuesday (marți)	February	Summer (vară)
Wednesday (miercuri)	March	Autumn/ Fall (toamnă)
Thursday (joi)	April	Winter (iarnă)
Friday (vineri)	May	
Saturday (sâmbătă)	June	
Sunday (duminică)	July	
	August	
	September	
	October	
	November	
	December	

## COLORS (Brit. Colours)

Black	Negru
White	Alb
Red	Roșu
Yellow	Galben
Blue	Albastru
Green	Verde
Brown	Maro
Orange	Portocaliu
Purple	Purpuriu/ Roșu-închis

Gray	Gri
------	-----

### What's the weather like?

	It's sunny. (opposite = it's sullenly./it's cloudy.)
	It's foggy.
	It's windy.
	It's raining.
	It's cold.

### PERSONAL THINGS

Backpack	Rucsac
Umbrella	Umbrelă
Sunglasses	Ochelari de soare
Cap	Șapcă, bască
Gloves	Mănuși
Shoes	Pantofi
Boots	Ghete
Scarf	Fular
Jacket	Jachetă
Coat	Palton
Hat	Pălărie
T-shirt	Tricou
Shorts	Pantaloni scurți
Comb	Pieptăn
Map	Hartă
Camera	Aparat foto

Money	Bani
-------	------

### **HUMAN BODY**

Head	Finger
Ear	Elbow
Mouth	Stomach
Nose	Chest
Eye	Back
Neck	Leg
Throat	Foot
Shoulder	Knee
Arm	Ankle
Hand	Toe

### **ANIMALS AND BIRDS**

Dog=câine	Duck=rață
Cat=pisică	Parrot=papagal
Mouse=șoarece	Canary=canar
Horse=cal	Rooster (American en.)=cocoș
Cow=vacă	Hen=găină
Sheep=oaie	Chicken=pui
Goat=capră	Goose=gâscă
Pig=porc	Turkey=curcan
Rabbit=iepure	Peacock=păun
Snake=șarpe	Pheasant=fazan
Bear=urs	Seagull=pescăruș
Frog=broască	Owl=bufniță
Turtle=broască țestoasă	Eagle=vultur

### **FRUITS AND VEGETABLES**

Oranges	Onion
Bananas	Leek=praz
Watermelon	Carrot
Grapes	Potato
Pears	Tomato
Apples	Cucumber=castravete
Strawberries	Cabbage=varză
Blackberries=mure	Cauliflower=conopidă
Blueberries=afine	Pepper=ardei gras
Plum	Hotpepper=ardei iute

Quince=gutuie	Parsnip=păstârnac
Cherry	Soybean (Amer.)/ soya bean (Br.)/soya
Pineapple	Pumpkin

## GRAMMAR BASICS

The verbs *To Be*, *To Have*, and *To Go*

*To be*, *to have* and *to go* are irregular verbs. Their forms in the present tense are as follows:

TO BE	TO HAVE	TO GO
I am	I have	I go
You are	You have	You go
He/She/It is	He/She/It has	He/She/It goes
We are	We have	We go
You are	You have	You go
They are	They have	They go

## Lesson I

Imagine a classroom. There is one teacher there. That is the teacher. There are two boys there. Those are the boys. That is the door. Those are windows. There is one door and there are two windows. The door is closed. One window is open; the other window is closed. There is a clock on the wall. There is a table in the classroom. There are flowers on the table. There is an inkpot on the table. The teacher is near the table. One boy is near the teacher; the other boy is near the window. There are two pictures on the wall. One picture is near the door; the other picture is near the window.

### Grammar

Singular number <i>(one)</i> a boy a window a tree the boy the window the tree a man a woman a child the man the woman the child	Plural number <i>(two, three, four, etc.)</i> boys windows trees the boys the windows the trees men women children the men the women the children
<b>Singular + s = Plural</b> <i>Exceptions</i>	
<i>Singular</i> man, woman, child	<i>Plural</i> men, women, children
<b>Affirmative</b>	
<i>Singular</i> It is This is That is There is	<i>Plural</i> They are These are Those are There are
<b>Interrogative</b>	
Is it? Is this? Is that? Is there?	Are they? Are these? Are those? Are there?

<b>Negative</b>	
It is not (it isn't) This is not (this isn't) That is not (that isn't) There is not (there isn't)	They are not (they aren't) These are not (these aren't) Those are not (those aren't) There are not (there aren't)
<b>Examples</b>	
<i>Singular</i> This is a cigarette. This is a man. This is a mountain. The man is a waiter. That is not a king. That is not a queen. Is this an aeroplane? Is this an egg? Is it a good egg? Is this a good cigarette? Is that egg good? The window is open. That egg is bad. This cigarette is good. That is an egg; it is in the egg-cup. This window is open. This door is closed. The picture is on the wall. That boy is near the door. This boy isn't near the window. His isn't a mountain. It isn't an aeroplane.	<i>Plural</i> These are cigarettes. These are men. Those are mountains. The men are waiters. Those are not kings. Those are not queens. Are these aeroplanes? Are these eggs? Are they good eggs? Are these good cigarettes? Are those eggs good? The windows are open. Those eggs are bad. These cigarettes are good. Those are eggs; they are in egg-cups. These windows are open. These doors are closed. The pictures are on the wall (or walls). Those boys are near the door (or doors). These boys aren't near the window(s). These aren't mountains. They aren't aeroplanes.
<i>Affirmative</i> This is a pencil. This is a ship. That is an umbrella. Those are mountains. It is a boy. They are waiters. It is a good egg. They are good cigarettes. This cigarette is good. This egg is bad. This window is open. The doors are closed. There is a clock on the wall. There is an inkpot on the table.	<i>Negative</i> This is not (isn't) a pencil. This is not (isn't) a ship. That is not (isn't) an umbrella. Those are not (aren't) mountains. It is not (isn't) a boy. They are not (aren't) waiters. It is not (isn't) a good egg. They are not (aren't) good cigarettes. This cigarette is not (isn't) good. This egg is not (isn't) bad. This window is not (isn't) open. The doors are not (aren't) closed. There is not (isn't) a clock on the wall. There is not (isn't) an inkpot on the table.

<p><i>Affirmative</i></p> <p>That is an aeroplane.  This is a motor-car.  Those are tea-cups.  These are flowers.  It is a boy.  They are kings.  They are queens.  That is a bad egg.  That apple is bad.  That door is closed.  There is a clock on the wall.  There are flowers on the table.</p>	<p><i>Interrogative</i></p> <p>Is that an aeroplane?  Is this a motor-car?  Are those tea-cups?  Are these flowers?  Is it a boy?  Are they kings?  Are they queens?  Is that a bad egg?  Is that apple bad?  Is that door closed?  Is there a clock on the wall?  Are there flowers on the table?</p>

## Lesson II

### WHO

The boy is in the bed.

**Who** is in the bed? The boy is in the bed, *or* The boy is, *or* The boy.

### HE

Is the boy in the bed? Yes, **he** is.

Where is the boy? **He** is in the bed.

The girl is in the classroom.

**Who** is in the classroom? The girl is in the classroom, *or* The girl is, *or* The girl.

### SHE

Is the girl in the classroom? Yes, **she** is.

Where is the girl? **She** is in the classroom.

The woman and the baby are on the chair.

**Who** are on the chair? The woman and the baby are on the chair,

*or* The woman and the baby are.

*or* The woman and the baby.

Is the woman on the chair? Yes, she is.

Is the girl on the chair? No, she isn't.

### THEY

Are the woman and the baby on the chair? Yes, **they** are.

Where are the woman and the baby? **They** are on the chair.

### WHAT

The train is in the station.

**What** is in the station? The train is in the station, *or* The train is, *or* The train.

### IT

Is the train in the station? Yes, **it** is.

Is the ship in the station? No, **it** isn't.

Where is the train? **It** is in the station.

**What** is in the egg-cup? An egg is in the egg-cup, *or* An egg is, *or* An egg.

Is the egg in the egg-cup? Yes, it is.

Where is the egg? It is in the egg-cup.

**What** are in the sky? The aeroplanes are in the sky, *or* The aeroplanes are, *or* The aeroplanes.

Are the aeroplanes in the sky? Yes, they are.

Where are the aeroplanes? They are in the sky,

**What is this?**



This is a picture of a man, Mr. Brown, and a boy, Richard Brown.

Mr. Brown is a father. Richard is a son.

Who is the father of Richard Brown? Mr. Brown is.

Who is the son of Mr. Brown? Richard Brown is.

**What is this?**



This is a picture of a woman, Mrs. Brown, and a girl, Mary Brown. Mrs. Brown is the wife of Mr. Brown. Mr. Brown is the husband of Mrs. Brown. Mrs. Brown is a mother. Mary Brown is a daughter.

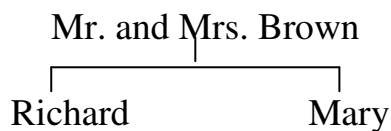
Who is the mother of Mary Brown? Mrs. Brown is.

Who is the daughter of Mrs. Brown? Mary Brown is.

Mary Brown is the sister of Richard Brown.

Richard Brown is the brother of Mary Brown.

Mary Brown and Richard Brown are children of Mr. and Mrs. Brown.



## Lesson III



Teacher: I am a teacher. I am Mr. (miss, Mrs.) \_\_\_\_\_. What are you?

Class: We are students.

Teacher: Are you a student, Mr. A?

Mr. A: Yes, I am a student.

Teacher: Are you a student, Miss B?

Miss B: Yes, I am.

Teacher: Are you in the classroom, Mr. C?

Mr. C: Yes, I am in the classroom.

Teacher: Are you a man, a woman, a boy, or a girl?

Student: I am a \_\_\_\_\_.

Teacher: What are you, a man, a woman, a boy, or a girl?

Student: I am a \_\_\_\_\_.

Teacher: Who are you?

Student: I am Mr. D.

Teacher: How are you, Mr. D?

Mr. D: I am very well, thank you.

Teacher: Who are you?

Student: I am Miss E.

Teacher: how are you, Miss E?

Miss. E: I am very well, thank you.

Teacher: What are you all?

Class: We are all students.

Teacher: Are all men?

Students: Yes, we are. / No we aren't.

Some of the students are men, some are women.

Some of the students are men, others are women.

Teacher: I count the students: one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten, eleven, twelve, thirteen, fourteen, fifteen. There are fifteen students in the class. Mr. F., count the students, please.

Mr. F: I count the students: one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten, eleven, twelve, thirteen, fourteen, fifteen.

### **How many, right, wrong**

Teacher: How many students are there in the class, Mr. F.?

Mr. F: There are fifteen.

Teacher: That is right; thank you, Mr. F. What are two and two?

Student: Four, sir. **RIGHT**

Teacher: That is right. What are seven and three?

Student: Ten, sir.

Teacher: That is right. What is four from nine?

Student: Five, sir.

Teacher: That is right, too. What is five from twelve?

Student: Six, sir. **WRONG**

Teacher: No, that is wrong; that is not right. The answer is seven, not six.

### **Here, there**

Teacher: Mr. K., come here, please, and bring the book here. Thank you.

You are here and the book is here. Now take the book there, to the door, please. You are there and the book is there. Where are you, Mr. K.?

Mr. K: I am here, near the door.

Teacher: That is right; and where am I?

Mr. K: You are there, near the window.

Teacher: That is right.

Come here.

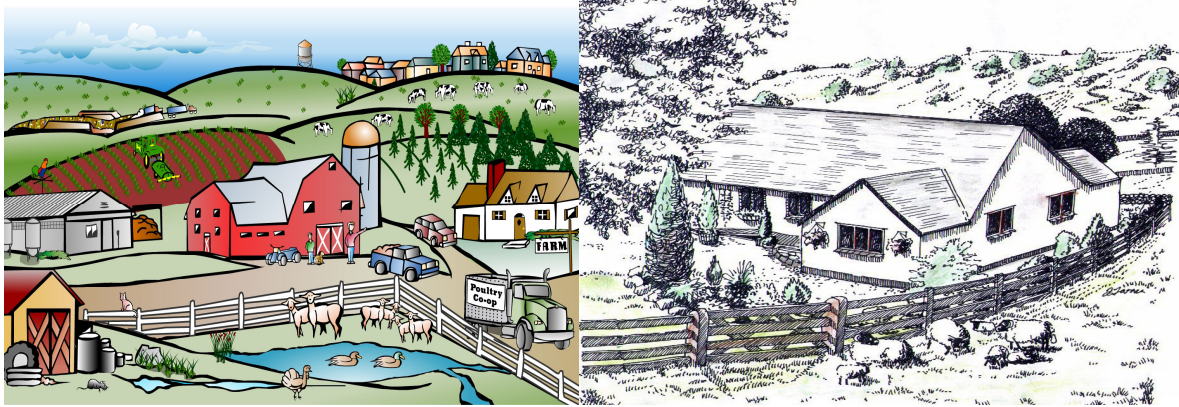
Go there.

### **Another, others**

Teacher: Mr. F. is one student, Mr. G. is another. Miss H. is another, Mr. K. is another, and there are eleven others; fifteen students altogether. Here is one shilling; here is another, number two; here is another, number three; and here are two others; five shillings altogether.

## Lesson IV

### The Farm



Now look at the pictures above. They are pictures of a farm. The farm is in the country; it is not in the town. It is a warm day; it is not a cold day. The sun is in the sky. There are some white clouds, but they are small and the sky is very blue. There is a mountain on the right of the second picture, and not far from the mountain there is a river. There are one or two big trees and some small trees in the pictures. The small trees are apple-trees. They are on the right of the pictures. There are red apples on the apple-trees. These apple-trees are in the garden of the farm-house. There are a lot of apples on the trees. There are flowers round the door and windows of the farm-house. There are a lot of animals on this farm. There are horses in the stable. One of the horses is black and the other ones are brown. There are some sheep in the field near the river. In the next field there are some cows. Some of the cows are brown, others are black and white. All the sheep are white except one. It is black. There are tractors in the picture. There are cabbages and potatoes in the field. There is a field of yellow corn behind the farm-house.

A man is digging in the garden. There are some cabbages in the garden. The man near the barn is the farmer. There is a dog behind the farmer; that is the farmer's dog. There is a woman in the farm-house; that is the farmer's wife. She is preparing lunch, she is not feeding the chickens now.

## Lesson V

England is a country; France is a country; Norway is another country; Turkey is another country; Egypt, Italy, Poland are other countries.

The people of England are English. They speak English.

The people of Germany are German. They speak German.

The people of Norway are Norwegian. They speak Norwegian.

There are two meanings of *country* in English. Here are examples in the sentences:

1. England is a country; Spain is another *country*.
2. The house is in the *country*; it is not in the town.



*country*



*town*

There are a lot of people in the town; there are not many people in the country.

There are a lot of cows and sheep in the country; there are not many in the town.

Here are two meanings in a joke:



Lady: Are these eggs good?

Shopkeeper: Oh, yes, they are just in from the country.

Lady: Yes, but what country?

Mr. Priestley is English; he is an Englishman. He speaks English, his language is English.

Teacher: What country are you from, Mr. A., and what is your language?

Mr. A: I am from Poland; I speak Polish, I am a Pole, my language is Polish.

Teacher: What country are you from, Mr. B.?

Mr. B: I am from Italy; I speak Italian.

Teacher: What country are you from, Miss C.?

Miss C: I come from Mexico; I speak Spanish.

Teacher: What are you, Mr. D.? Are you Spanish?

Mr. D: No, I am not a Spaniard; I am a Portuguese.

Teacher: Are you Swedish, Miss E.?

Miss E: No, I am not Swedish; I come from Denmark; I am a Dane; my language is Danish.

Teacher: Where are you from, Mr. F.?

Mr. F: I come from Holland; I am a Dutchman. I speak Dutch; my language is Dutch.

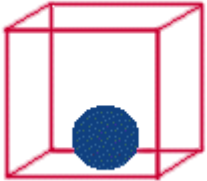
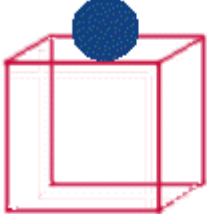
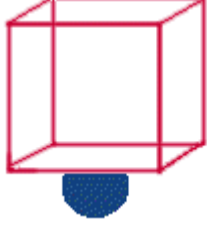












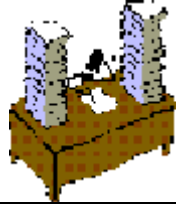
Miss G: I come from France, from Paris. I am French, a Parisian. My language is French. My friend Olga comes from Finland; she is Finnish. She speaks Finnish; her language is Finnish.

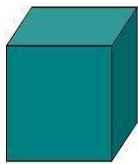
Mr. H: My brother and I come from Greece; our country is Greece. We both speak the same language – Greek; our language is Greek.

Teacher: Mr. H. and his brother come from Greece; their country is Greece. They both speak the same language – Greek; their language is Greek

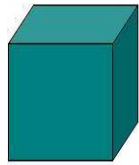
## Lesson VI

## Where is it?

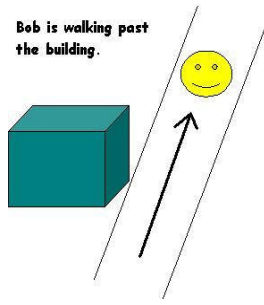
				
The ball is <b>in</b> the box	The ball is <b>on</b> the box.	The ball is <b>under</b> the box.		
John's house 	Jane's house 	Bill's house 		
John's house is <b>next to</b> Jane's house.	Jane's house is <b>between</b> Bill's and John's houses.	Bill's house is <b>next to</b> Jane's house.		
				
The climbers stand <b>on top of</b> the mountain.	The man stands <b>between</b> the two enemies.	The enemies stand <b>opposite</b> each other.	The gardeners stand <b>behind</b> the pumpkins.	The man stands <b>near</b> the gopher and holds the umbrella <b>over</b> it.
				
The man looks <b>through</b> the telescope <b>in</b> his hands.	The man writes the address <b>on</b> the package.	The man looks <b>at</b> the mail <b>in</b> the post box.	The man looks <b>at</b> the clock <b>on</b> the wall.	The manager sits <b>at</b> his desk <b>on</b> his chair.



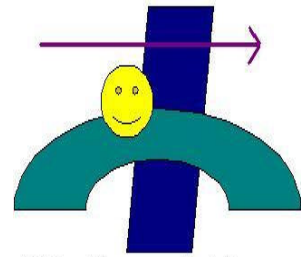
Bob is near the box.



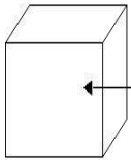
Bob is next to the box.



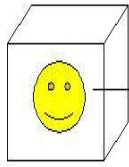
Bob is walking past the building.



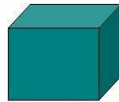
Bob is walking across the bridge.



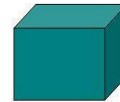
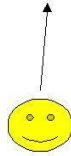
Bob is walking into the room.



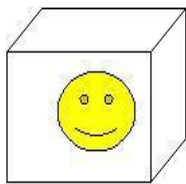
Bob is walking out of the room.



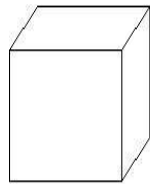
Bob is walking towards the building.



Bob is walking away from the building.



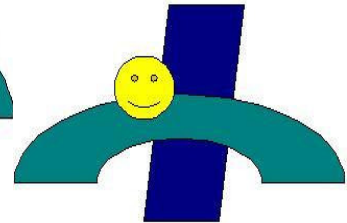
Bob is inside the room.



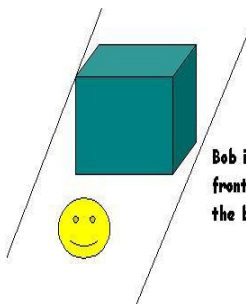
Bob is outside the room.



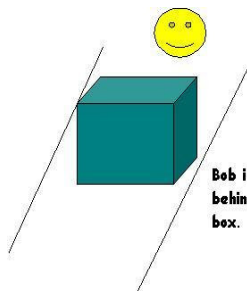
Bob is under the bridge.



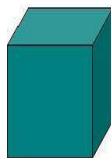
Bob is over the river.



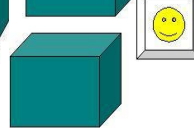
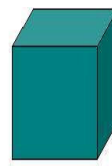
Bob is in front of the box.



Bob is behind the box.



Bob is between the boxes.



The picture of bob is among the boxes.

## Lesson VII

## The Seaside



These are pictures of the seaside and of a hotel. Mr. and Mrs. Smith and their children, Charles, Henry, Mary and Jane, are staying at the hotel. The hotel has the words *Devon Hotel* below the two open windows. Just below the words under the windows there are many flowers.

It is a warm day; the sun is shining brightly. Mrs. Smith is wearing a red and white striped dress. All the women are wearing thin dresses because it is a hot day. One of the boys has a big ball under one arm and a towel under the other. That is Henry Smith. He is running quickly down the steps; he is about half way down. He is wearing a red bathing suit. The boys can play football on the sand.

Some children are playing on the yellow sand or bathing in the blue water. Charles Smith is swimming to a big, black rock. You can see his arms coming out of the water. He can swim very well; he is a good swimmer. There are some other boys and girls in the water, but they cannot swim very well; they are swimming badly; they are not good swimmers; they are just learning. They want to learn. A young man is teaching these children to swim. His name is John Priestley. He is a very good swimmer.

Mrs. Smith is looking at the children. She has a book in her hand, but she isn't reading. Mr. Smith has a newspaper, but he isn't reading, he isn't looking at the swimmers, he isn't looking at the children. What is he doing? He is sleeping!

### **Why? ... Because ... Want**

Why are the women wearing summer dresses? Because the day is warm.

Why is the girl walking to the water? Because she wants to bathe.

Why is the man speaking to the waiter? Because he wants a drink.

### **Answer the following questions about the text:**

1. Who are staying at the Devon Hotel?
2. Who are with the boys and the girls?
3. What kind of a day is it?
4. What kind of dresses are women wearing?
5. What are the names of Mr. and Mrs. Smith's children?
6. What colour is Mrs. Smith's dress?
7. Where can the boys play football?
8. What is Mr. Smith doing?

## **Lesson VIII**

### **Time. Days, Months, Seasons**



This is a picture of a clock. It has a round face with figures on it, and two hands, a long hand and a short hand.

The short hand points to the hours, the long hand points to the minutes. Some clocks have three hands, a long hand, a short hand and a very short one to point to the seconds.

We can tell the time by a clock or watch. A clock is big; it is generally on the wall, or it stands on the table or over the fire. A watch is small; we can put one in our pocket or wear it on the wrist.

Some clocks are very big; for example, Big Ben, the clock on the Houses of Parliament in London. The minute hand of Big Ben is fourteen feet long, and the hour hand is nine feet long. You can hear Big Ben every night on the wireless at nine o'clock. At that hour its sound goes out all over the world.

Teacher: Look at the picture of a clock above. Can you tell the time, Mr. A.?

Mr. A: Yes, I can tell the time.

Teacher: What time is it by this clock?

Mr. A: It is one o'clock.

Teacher: The minute hand moves to 1. What time is it then, Mr. A.?

Mr. A: It is five minutes past one (or five past one).

Teacher: Quite right. Now the minute hand moves to 2. What time is it then, Mr. B.?

Mr. B: Ten minutes past one (or ten past one).

Teacher: Very good. Now the minute hand moves again, this time to 3.

Mr. C: It is then a quarter past one.

Teacher: Correct.

Miss D: Can I say it is one-fifteen?

Teacher: Yes, you can say "one-fifteen", "one-thirty", or "one-forty-five" instead of "a quarter past", "half past", or "a quarter to". We generally say that for the times of trains or aeroplanes, e.g. *I come on the nine-fifteen train every morning. It gets into London at nine-forty-five.*

Miss E: When can I say "past" and when can I say "to"?

Teacher: Who knows the answer to that?

Miss F: I can answer that, I think.

Teacher: Very well, Miss F., what is the answer?

Miss F: We say "past" at 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6. We say "to" at 7, 8, 9, 10 and 11.

Teacher: That is quite correct, Miss F.

Mr. A: How can you show the difference between twelve o'clock in the day and twelve o'clock at night?

Teacher: Who can give an answer to that?

Mr. B: I can. Twelve o'clock at night is "midnight"; after that we use the letters *a.m.*, e.g. 12.10 a.m.

Mr. C: What is the meaning of *a.m.*, please?

Teacher: Miss D., can you tell Mr. C.?

Miss D: Yes. *A.m.* is a short form of the Latin words *ante meridiem*, meaning “before noon”.

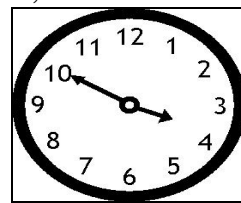
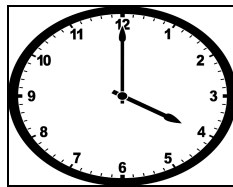
Teacher: That’s very good, Miss D. Now what is twelve o’clock in the daytime, Miss E.?

Miss E: Twelve o’clock in the daytime is “noon” (or “mid-day”). After that we use the letters *p.m.*; for example, 1.45 p.m.

Teacher: That is quite correct. Now, Miss F., what is the meaning of *p.m.*?

Miss F: *P.m.* is a short form of the Latin words *post meridiem*, meaning “after noon”.

Teacher: That is very good. Now look at these three clocks. The right time is four o’clock. What can you say about the middle clock, Mr. A.?



Mr. A: The clock in the middle is right. It is telling the correct time.

Teacher: Good. Now, Mr. B., you speak about the clock on the left.

Mr. B: The clock on the left is not right. It is not telling the correct time. It is ten minutes slow.

Teacher: That’s right. Now, Mr. C., you speak about the clock on the right.

Mr. C: the clock on the right is incorrect, too. It is not telling the right time. It’s ten minutes fast.

Teacher: Very good.

### **Days, months, seasons**

There are seven days in a week. They are: Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday. The first six are “week-days”. Sunday is not a week-day. The day before today is *yesterday*; the day after today is *tomorrow*.

There are twelve months in the year. The names of the months are: January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December.

The seasons in England are: Spring (March, April, May), Summer (June, July, August), Autumn (September, October, November), Winter (December, January, February).

## **Lesson IX**

### **was, were**

Teacher: Where were you this time last year, Mr. A.?

Mr. A: A year ago I was in Turkey. I was at school there.

Teacher: Were you studying English then?

Mr. A: Yes, I was studying a little but not very much. I was at school in Ankara. My brother was there, too. It was a very good school. All the teachers were good; the teacher for my class was very good. But my brother and I were only at school for a few weeks before coming to England, so our knowledge of the language was, of course, very small.

### **could**

Teacher: You can speak English a little now, Mr. B., can't you?

Mr. B: Yes, I can speak a little; not quite as much as my friend, Mr. A.

Teacher: Could you speak English a year ago?

Mr. B: This time last year I could speak only a few words; I could not speak English well. It was very difficult to learn English.

Teacher: How was that?

Mr. B: Well, I was not as lucky as Mr. A. He could get a good teacher; I could not. There were no English people in my town, a very small town in Egypt, and it was difficult to find a good teacher. There were one or two teachers, but they were not English. They could not speak English well and couldn't explain the grammar to their students; so I was very glad to come to England to learn English well.

### **had**

Teacher: What about you, Miss D.; could you speak English a year ago?

Miss D: No, a year ago I couldn't speak a word. I wasn't thinking about English or England. I had no time; we had a big farm and I had a lot of work to do on it. I had to work hard.

Teacher: Had you? That is very interesting.

Miss D: Yes. I am fond of the country, and I was very fond of work, but I couldn't do all that work and learn English, too. I hadn't a minute for study from morning till night.

Teacher: What animals had you on the farm?

Miss D: Oh, we had horses and cows, sheep and pigs.

Teacher: And were they a lot of work for you?

Miss D: Well, there were fifteen men working on the farm. They were all big eaters and I had to feed all these men. It was nearly a full day's work cooking their food. I couldn't cook enough; they could always eat everything on the table. Oh, yes, it was hard work, and I couldn't find time for study, but I had a happy time on the farm and I was very sorry to come away.

## **Lesson X**

This is Mr. Priestley, the teacher. He teaches English and he knows English, French and German, and he speaks and reads and writes these languages very well.

He is not a young man, but he is not old. He is about forty-four or forty-five years old. He is a good-looking man, tall, handsome, rather thin, with dark-brown hair just beginning to go grey. He is always very well-dressed, but quietly, in good taste. He usually wears suits of dark brown, dark blue or dark grey.

He speaks quietly and pleasantly, but there is strength under his quietness, and every student in his class knows this. He is quiet and pleasant because he is strong. Strength is generally quiet; weakness often is not.

He reads many books and he writes books for his students. When he is at home, you can see him sitting in his study, in a big armchair by the fire. A bright fire is burning in the fireplace. It burns all day in cold weather. Another armchair is on the opposite side of the fire. On his left there is a tray with a coffee pot and a coffee-cup on it, and near to it you can see his pipe and tobacco.

A cat is sitting on the arm of his chair. That is Mr. Priestley's cat, Sally. She often sits there, or on his desk when he is writing, and watches him. His desk is in the middle of the room. Pens, pencils, an inkpot and paper are on the desk. The telephone is on the left, and a tray for letters is on the right. Just behind the telephone there is a reading-lamp. He works here at his books for three or four hours every evening.

It is almost eleven o'clock by the clock on the wall, but Mr. Priestley is still working. He works very late, sometimes till two or three o'clock in the morning, but generally he goes to bed about twelve or one o'clock.

He often teaches his students in this room. He hasn't many students, generally about six. They come here for their lessons every day except Saturday and Sunday. Saturday and Sunday are holidays.

Teacher: The lesson says "Mr. Priestley is not a young man, but he is not old." So the opposite of *old* is *young*. But isn't there another opposite of *old*?

Mr. A: Yes, there is *new*, isn't there? The opposite of "an old book" is not "a young book", but "a new book"

Teacher: That is right. Notice, too, the two uses of *old*: "He is an *old* man.", "The boy is five years *old*."

Mr. B: The lesson says "Mr. Priestley is tall." What is the opposite of *tall*, please?

Teacher: The opposite of *tall* is *short*. Here is a tall man and a short man. Mr. Littleman is short. Mr. Lengthy is tall.

Mr. C: Do you say "Mr. Lengthy has 77 inches." or "Mr. Littleman has only 62 inches."?

Teacher: No, we don't say that; we say "Mr. Lengthy is six foot five inches tall", or "Mr. Littleman is only five foot two", or "Mr. Priestley is six feet". And speaking of a person's age, we say "Mr. Priestley *is* forty-four years old", and not "Mr. Priestley *has* forty-four years".

Miss D: isn't there another opposite of *short*? The opposite of "a *short* stick" isn't "a *tall* stick", is it?

Teacher: No, you are quite right. The opposite of “a *short* person” is “a *tall* person”; the opposite of “a *short* thing” is “a *long* thing”.

Miss E: The lesson speaks about Mr. Priestley being strong, meaning “a strong character”. Do you use the same word for a man with a strong body?

Teacher: Oh, yes. Here you are: Mr. Armstrong has strong arms. He is a very strong man. Mr. Feeble is not strong. His arms are very weak. He is a weak man.

Miss F: Can you speak of strong tea or strong coffee?

Teacher: Oh, yes; and strong drink and strong language.

Miss F: Mr. Armstrong is a tall, strong man. Is he, then, a big man or a great man?

Teacher: A big one, not a great one.

Miss F: What is the difference, please?

Teacher: Well, it is rather difficult to put into a few words; but, in short, one is of the body, the other is of the spirit and character of a man. Bigness is a bodily thing; greatness is a spiritual one. A great man can have, like Lord Nelson, a weak body; but he has a strong spirit. A big man can have bodily strength, but spiritual weakness.

Miss F: Thank you; I quite see the difference now.

## Lesson XI

You already know Mr. Priestley, the teacher and writer. In this lesson you will read about his wife, Mrs. Priestley, the Priestley's house, and some of the people in the house. Mrs. Priestley knows all about the house; she does the work in it every day, and today she will tell you a little about it. Mrs. Priestley is a pleasant-looking woman of about forty, with warm brown hair and soft dark-brown eyes. She is kind and gentle, but she manages her house (and, in her quiet way, her husband) very well. He is, of course, a clever man, but a little unpractical, and he needs Mrs. Priestley too look after him. Mrs. Priestley, on the other hand, is very practical and full of common sense.

The Priestleys have two children, John and Margaret. John is eighteen, six foot tall, and a fine manly fellow. He is at university and is studying to be a doctor. He is a clever, hard-working student, a first-class footballer, boxer and runner. He is strong both in body and character, and quiet and thoughtful like his father. He will make a good doctor.

Margaret is only eleven. She is a lovely little girl with golden hair and dark blue eyes and a spirit that is always bright and happy, full of joy and gaiety. She isn't fond of study of any kind, but she loves music and dancing and she sings very prettily. She is like a ray of sunshine in the house. Mr. Priestley is very fond of his son John and very proud of him; and Margaret is the apple of his eye. But here comes Mrs. Priestley. "Good morning, Mrs. Priestley; how are you?"

Mrs. Priestley: Good morning, everyone. I'm very well, thank you. You want to know about my house. Well, I am very pleased to be here and I will gladly tell you something about it.

The house is rather big, and there is a lot of work in it, so I can't do everything alone. I have Susan and Lizzie to help me with the work. Lizzie is our cook, and she is a very good cook, but she is no good at all at housework. Now, Susan is very good at housework, but she can't cook at all – she can't even boil an egg. But that is quite all right, for Lizzie gets on with her cooking, and Susan and I do the housework – and believe me, we all work very hard.

Susan and Lizzie get up at a quarter to seven, and make the fires and open the windows. I get up at half past seven, and so does my husband, in time for breakfast at eight o'clock. We have breakfast in the breakfast-room. I like to begin the day well, so our breakfast is always a good one. My husband reads his newspaper and smokes a cigarette with his last cup of tea, before he begins his work at nine o'clock.

Then Lizzie and Susan begin to clean the house, wash up, make the beds, and get the vegetables ready for lunch. We have lunch at one o'clock. We have afternoon tea at about five o'clock. After tea we sit and talk or listen to the wireless or read. At about seven or eight we have dinner or supper and at eleven o'clock I generally go to bed, but my husband likes to sit up late and work.

## Lesson XII

Here are Mr. Priestley's students. They are coming to his house for their lessons. They are going to talk about their work and their holidays, their countries and their lives, their joys and their sorrows. They will tell you what they like and what they dislike. They will tell you stories; they will write letters, tell jokes and sing songs.

The first one to come is Jan. he is generally early. He doesn't like to be a minute late for his lessons. He is not only very clever, but he is also a very hard worker and likes to do everything well. He has rather dark brown hair and good grey eyes. He is not very tall, but he is strong, swims well and is a good footballer.

This is Lucille. Lucille is beautiful and rich and merry. She is tall and slim, with big dark eyes and black hair. She goes out to dinner or a dance or a theatre almost every night, and doesn't generally get to bed until very late at night – or rather early in the morning. So, she doesn't do very much work.

This is Olaf. He is six foot three tall; e can walk and climb all day and he never feels tired. He is as strong as a horse. He has blue eyes and yellow hair. He doesn't talk much, but h thinks a lot.

Here is Pedro. E is very handsome, tall and dark and well-dressed. He is rich and clever, too. He does everything well. He is Spanish, but he speaks English and French very well; he goes everywhere and can talk well about almost everything – music, pictures, other countries, literature and life.

The next one to come in is Frieda. She has brown hair and big grey eyes. She doesn't talk much; she is rather quiet, but is very kind and nice; they all like her. All the students think she is pretty, except Jan; he thinks she is beautiful.

And here is the last one. He is generally the last one to come, but the first to go away. This is Hob. He is certainly not handsome or hard-working or clever. But he thinks that he is all these. He doesn't like swimming or football. He thinks that they are too much like hard work. He doesn't like study. He says that study makes him tired. He isn't polite, and he isn't well-dressed. He doesn't always listen to lessons in class (he sometimes goes to sleep there). He isn't quiet; he talks a lot. E is a good eater and a good sleeper. But he is good-hearted and loves a joke. He knows a lot of funny stories and he always wants to tell them to the class.

Now they are all going into Mr. Priestley's study.

### Lesson XIII

Mr. Priestley: Good morning. We will have a general talk this morning with all of you taking part. What things in life do you dislike? Come on, I want to hear your ideas. Frieda, will you begin, please?

Frieda: Well, I don't quite know what to say, but, to begin with, I don't like London. I am tired of London.

Pedro: I remember, sir, a sentence of Dr. Johnson's, "When a man is tired of London, he is tired of life." Johnson and Dickens and Shakespeare (at least in his youth) certainly liked London.

Jan: Oh, London's all right, but there are too many people, too many cars, too many buses, too many taxis and too much noise.

Mr. Priestley: Yes, but, on the other hand, there are good libraries and museums and theatres. I know that you are fond of Shakespeare, Jan; and in one or other of the theatres there is always a Shakespeare play.

Jan: Yes, I like Shakespeare's plays, and the library certainly helps me with my work; but when I have time, I like to get out of London and walk in the country and swim or play football.

Mr. Priestley: What do you say to that, Frieda?

Frieda: I agree with Jan. I like London for some things, but after a time I get tired of it. My home is a quiet little place in Switzerland among the mountains, and when I am in the noise of London I always want to be among the mountains and the trees, or at some quiet seaside place (there are some lovely ones in England) with the sea and the yellow sand and the sunshine. And in summer when London is hot and burning ...

Hob: I say, sir, I know a song "London's Burning". Can I sing it? It begins "London's ..."

Mr. Priestley: Wait a minute, Hob. You can sing your song at the end of the lesson, but I want to hear the other speak now. Lucille, do you like these quiet places?

Lucille: I certainly do not! I feel half dead in them. I know these quiet seaside places with miles of sand and no one on it except me, two or three noisy children and an old man or two. I once stayed at one of them – but only once. Never again for me! There was one small hotel with a sad-looking waiter. We had uneatable cabbage every day and undrinkable coffee every evening. The people in those places all go to bed at nine o'clock because there is nothing else to do.

Mr. Priestley: Well, Lucille, we certainly know what you don't like. What do you like?

Lucille: I like gaiety and life and fun. I want to meet people, young and merry and interesting people. I like good hotels, with good food and good wine. I like theatres with bright music. I like flying and motoring, if the car is a fast one!

## Lesson XIV

Hob: Can we have a talk this morning, sir, about food, about breakfast and lunches and dinners and so on? It is a subject that interests me very much.

Mr. Priestley: Certainly, Hob. But Lizzie could tell you more about this. She is the person who cooks our meals.

Hob: What did she cook for breakfast today, sir?

Mr. Priestley: We had fruit, boiled eggs, toast, bread and butter, marmalade and tea.

Olaf: I had a breakfast this morning that I enjoyed very much; a cereal, bacon and eggs, marmalade, toast, coffee. I think there is nothing like an English breakfast.

Lucille: No bacon and eggs in the morning for me, thank you. My breakfast is always rolls and coffee.

Frieda: You can't drink English coffee, can you?

Lucille: Luckily, at my hotel, there is a cook who is French, so I can drink the coffee.

Olaf: That's true. Their bacon, their bread, their butter, their tea are always good; their coffee is always bad.

Mr. Priestley: Where must I go to get good coffee?

Lucille: Come to France; we always make good coffee there.

Jan: I like Polish coffee; our coffee is always good.

Olaf: Come and taste the coffee that we make in Sweden. There is none like it.

Frieda: We make lovely coffee in Switzerland – coffee with thick cream in it.

Mr. Priestley: And what about food in England?

Pedro: I think there is a sameness about English dinners that makes them uninteresting – boiled potatoes, roast beef that is often burned or not cooked enough, cabbage that is watery and tasteless.

Olaf; Well, you can say what you like, but give me my English breakfast and English food generally.

Jan: I think Olaf is right. Good roast beef, nicely-browned roast potatoes. Where can you roast beef like English beef?

Olaf: Or mutton like English mutton?

Pedro: Or soup like English hotel soup? Nowhere, thank heaven!

Hob: Do you know the story of the man who was having soup in an English hotel? The waiter gave it to him and then, looking out of the window, said to the man, "It looks like rain, sir."; "Yes," said the man, as he took a spoonful of soup, "and it tastes like rain, too".

Jan: Soup doesn't matter to me if I get some good beef and potatoes and then some bread and cheese and butter. After a lunch like that, I can work all day.

Hob: After a lunch like that, I can sleep all afternoon!

## Grammar

Introduction to verbs  
Introduction to verbs – exercises  
Simple Present Tense  
Present Continuous  
Interrogative, Negative Forms  
Present Tense – Exercises  
Simple Past Tense  
Past Continuous Tense  
Present Perfect Simple Tense  
Present Perfect Continuous – Exercises  
Past Perfect Tense – simple aspect  
Past Perfect Tense – continuous aspect  
Past Perfect – Exercises  
Future Simple Tense  
Future Continuous Tense  
Future Perfect Tense  
Future Perfect Continuous  
Other means of expressing the Future  
Future – Exercises  
Revision of Tenses  
Revision of Tenses – Exercises  
Reported speech  
Reported speech – Exercises  
Modal Verbs  
Modal Verbs – Exercises  
Question Tags  
Question Tags – Exercises  
Passive Voice  
Passive Voice – Exercises  
Conditional and If Clauses  
Conditional Clauses – Exercises  
The Noun  
The Noun – Exercises  
The Article  
The Article – Exercises  
The Adjective  
The Adjective – Exercises  
The Adverb  
The Adverb – Exercises  
The Pronoun  
The Pronoun – Exercises  
The Numeral

The Numeral – Exercises  
The Preposition  
The Preposition – Exercises  
Phrasal Verbs  
Phrasal Verbs – Exercises  
Infinitives  
Gerunds  
Infinitives or Gerunds?  
The Subjunctive  
The Subjunctive - Exercises



adăugând terminația -ed la forma de infinitiv a verbelor regulate. Formele de participiu perfect ale verbelor neregulate se află în Lista verbelor neregulate)

### Finite Forms

- depend on the person and the number (singular / plural) (se schimbă în funcție de persoană și număr)

I drink wine. - Eu beau vin.

We drink Coca-Cola. - Noi bem Coca-Cola

You drink tea. - Tu bei ceai

You drink juice. - Voi bei suc.

She drinks beer. - Ea bea bere

They drink lemonade. - Ei beau limonadă.

He drinks milk. - El bea lapte.

It (the dog) drinks water -El (Câinele) bea apă.

- depend on Tenses, Aspects, Voices (se schimbă în funcție de timpul gramatical sau aspect)

### NOTES / OBSERVAȚII:

- English tenses do not correspond totally with Romanian ones. (Nu există o corespondență exactă între timpurile gramaticale din limba engleză și cele din limba română)

Ex: I wrote = am scris

I have written = am scris

- There are 2 aspects (În limba engleză există două aspecte):

Simple (Simplu) - the action is described punctually, from the exterior (acțiunea este văzută din exterior, global, punctual).

Ex: Every day he gets up, he drinks his coffee, he reads the newspaper and he goes to work. = În fiecare zi el se scoală, își bea cafeaua, citește ziarul și se duce la serviciu.

Ex: Yesterday I read, I worked, I walked, etc. = Ieri am citit, am muncit, m-am plimbat (Printre altele). Acțiunile sunt văzute punctual, ca niște mărgelile înșirate pe o ață.

Continuous (Continuu) - the action is described in progression, from the interior (acțiunea este văzută din interior, în desfășurare)

Ex.: In this moment he is writing an article and he is trying to do it properly. = În acest moment el scrie un articol și încearcă să facă acest lucru bine.

Yesterday I was reading a book when the door bell rang. = Ieri citeam o carte când a sunat la ușă.

- Formele timpurilor verbale care vor fi studiate în acest manual:

Tenses	Aspects	
	SIMPLE	CONTINUOUS
Present Tense	I write	I am writing
Past Tense	I wrote	I was writing
Present Perfect	I have written	I have been writing
Past Perfect	I had written	I had been writing
Future Tense	I will write	I will be writing
Future Perfect	I will have written	I will have been writing
Conditional Present	I would write	I would be writing
Conditional Past	I would have written	I would have been writing

- Voices (Diateze):**

Active (Activă) - the subject performs the action (subiectul execută acțiunea). Ex:  
John drives his own car every day. = John își conduce mașina personală zilnic.

Passive (Pasivă) - the subject submits the action, performed by someone else (subiectul suferă acțiunea, care este executată de altcineva).  
Ex: The car is driven by John daily. = Mașina este condusă de John zilnic.

## INTRODUCTION TO VERBS - EXERCISES

### ELEMENTARY

1. Write an S if the verb of the sentence is at the Simple aspect and a C if it is at the Continuous aspect (Puneți litera S în dreptul propozițiilor al căror verb este la aspectul simplu și litera C dacă verbul este la aspectul continuu):

- Ex.: 1. I always try to go to bed before midnight. **S**  
 2. What is she doing now? **C**  
 3. Have you done your homework? \_\_\_\_\_  
 4. He was reading a book yesterday at 8 p.m. \_\_\_\_\_  
 5. She went to the theatre with her new friend. \_\_\_\_\_  
 6. She will be resting all the afternoon, tomorrow. \_\_\_\_\_  
 7. They have been waiting for a baby for a long time. \_\_\_\_\_  
 8. You have never understood him. \_\_\_\_\_  
 9. They often help each other. \_\_\_\_\_  
 10. They are learning a lot these days. \_\_\_\_\_

2. Complete with the right form of the verb TO BE (Completați cu forma corectă a verbului A FI):

1. I ..... 18 year old.
2. They ..... hungry.
3. You ..... not lazy, you ..... only tired.
4. There ..... two people at the door.
5. I ..... speaking to you now.
6. Sometimes he ..... not at home on Sundays.
7. We ..... helped by our parents.
8. There ..... an apple on the table.
9. .... there anybody home?
10. How ..... you? I ..... fine, thanks.
11. It ..... too late now to subscribe.
12. We ..... to meet tomorrow at 3 pm.

3. Give short answers to the following questions, using the auxiliary of the question (Dați răspunsuri scurte la următoarele întrebări, folosind auxiliarul prezent în întrebare):

Ex.: 1. Did you like the movie?	Yes, I did.
2. Have you read my book?	No, I have not.
3. Do you eat Mexican food?	Yes, I .....

4. Are they your friends?	Yes, they .....
5. Has she been to Italy?	No, .....
6. Does he love her?	Yes, .....
7. Had they met you before?	No, .....
8. Did you finish your work?	No. ....
9. Will you marry me?	Yes, .....
10. Do you know the answer?	No, .....

4. Complete with the right form of the verb TO HAVE (Completați cu forma corectă a verbului A AVEA):

1. I..... many duties in this company.
2. .... you got an answer for me?
3. She ..... 2 daughters and a son.
4. They ..... no money.
5. Do you..... Bill's phone number?
6. How many times ..... he checked if the door is locked?
7. Welcome and ..... a nice day in our club.
8. They don't ..... breakfast before 8 a.m.
9. Please make yourself comfortable and ..... a seat.
10. I ..... never seen this man before

### INTERMEDIATE

5. Which is the use of the verb TO BE in Exercise 2: auxiliary verb (A), ordinary verb (O) or part of an expression (E)? (Menționați în ce formă este folosit verbul A FI în exercițiul 2: ca verb auxiliar (A), ca verb predicativ (O) sau ca parte dintr-o expresie (E)) :

1	2	3
4	5	6
7	8	9
10	11	12

6. Write the interrogative form of the following sentences. Make the difference between the use of HAVE as an ordinary verb or as an auxiliary verb (Treceți următoarele propoziții la forma interogativă. Țineți cont de diferența dintre verbul HAVE ca auxiliar și ca verb predicativ):

Ex. 1. I have a car. Do you have a car?

2. They have helped me. Have they helped you?

3. She has been very kind to me.....
4. They have many friends in the neighbourhood.....
5. He has never stopped loving her.....
6. They have lunch together from time to time.....
7. You have promised to help us.....
8. I have time to stay with my daughter, now.....

## ADVANCED

7. Write the tenses of the verbs mentioned in Exercise 1 (Scrieți timpurile gramaticale ale verbelor de la exercițiul 1) :

Ex.: 1. Present Simple Tense  
2. Present Continuous Tense

3. ....
4. ....
5. ....
6. ....
7. ....
8. ....
9. ....
10. ....

8. Write the negative form of the following sentences (Scrieți următoarele propoziții la forma negativă):

Ex. 1. I eat a lot of apples every autumn. I do not eat a lot of apples every autumn.  
2 He helped me with my work. He did not help me with my work.

3. They have answered all the questions.....
4. You will know the truth tomorrow.....
5. She believed his arguments.....
6. We are good students.....
7. Tom likes science-fiction.....
8. She has written a lot, lately.....
9. They listened to the news carefully. ....
10. She tries to understand him. ....

## SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE

### FORM

The SIMPLE PRESENT has the same form as the infinitive but it adds -S or -ES for the 3rd person singular (Prezentul simplu are aceeași formă ca infinitivul, la pers. a 3-a singular adăugându-se -S sau -ES)

#### Affirmative:

I sing = Eu cânt

You sing = Tu cânți

He, she, it sings = El/Ea cântă

We sing = Noi cântăm

You sing = Voi cântați

They sing = Ei/Ele cântă

#### Interrogative:

Do I sing? = Eu cânt?

Do you sing? = Tu cânți?

Does he sing? = El cântă? ...

**Negative:**

I do not (don't) sing = Eu nu cânt

You do not (don't) sing = Tu nu cânți

He does not (doesn't) sing = El nu cântă

**NOTE:**

1. -ES after x, ss, sh, o, tch, ch

Ex.: he boxes, he kisses, he rushes, he goes, he catches, he touches

2. Cons. + y => Cons. + IES

Ex.: to carry- he carries, to try- he tries

Voc. + y => Voc. + YS

Ex.: to pay - he pays, to say - he says

**USES**

1. habitual, repeated actions (acțiuni care au loc în mod obișnuit, repetat)

Ex.. Mother goes shopping every afternoon.

Adverbs: often, usually, sometimes, occasionally, rarely, seldom, always, never, every day/week/month/year, on Mondays, twice a week, every two weeks

2. general truths, permanent situations (adevăruri general valabile, situații permanente)

Ex.: The Earth revolves on its axis. In many factories work begins at 8 o'clock.

3. scheduled future actions (acțiuni viitoare planificate în mod oficial)

Ex : This is our programme: we leave at 7.00 and arrive in Brasov at 10.00.

<b>For advanced students:</b>		
4	time clauses	Ex: You'll have a pleasant surprise when you open that box.
5	conditional clauses	Ex: If it rains, we won't go to the theatre.
6	Narratives	Ex: Well, what happens to me yesterday? I open the door and...
7	Headlines	Ex.: The Congress continues the series of talks on behaviourism.

# PRESENT CONTINUOUS

## FORM

**S + TO BE (present) + V + -ING**

### Affirmative:

I am singing = Eu cânt

You are singing = Tu cânti

He/she/it is singing = El/Ea cântă

We are singing = Noi cântăm

You are singing = Voi cântați

They are singing = Ei/Ele cântă

### Interrogative:

Are you singing? = Tu cânti?

### Negative:

You are not (aren't) singing = Tu nu cânti.

**NOTE** for advanced students: Spelling differs according to the verb ending:

- final -e is dropped: Ex.: love - loving, argue - arguing

- ee => - ee Ex: see - seeing, agree - agreeing

- l => ll Ex.: travel - travelling, signal - signalling

- y => yi Ex.: carry - carrying, enjoy - enjoying

- 1 syllable with one vowel, it doubles the final consonant (VC => VCC) Ex.: hit - hitting, run - running

- 2 syllables - stress on the 1st, no changes (C => C) Ex.: enter - entering, listen - listening, happen - happening

- stress on the 2nd, it doubles the final consonant (C => CC) Ex: begin - beginning, admit - admitting, prefer - preferring

## USES

1. actions happening at the moment of speaking (the action has duration and is not complete) (pentru acțiuni care au loc în momentul vorbirii; acțiunea nu este punctuală ci se află în progresie)

Ex.: The wind **is blowing** now.

2. a temporary action extending over a longer period of time including the time of speaking (pentru o acțiune temporară care are loc pe o perioadă de timp ce include și momentul vorbirii)

Ex: I **am living** in Bucharest this year/month/week/today.

3. unofficially planned future actions (near future), (pentru acțiuni viitoare planificate în mod neoficial, în viitorul apropiat)

Ex: We **are going** to the cinema tomorrow.

**For advanced** students:

4. instead of Simple Present - shows irony, annoyance

ex: They **are** always **complaining** about their neighbours.

5. temporal clauses

Ex.: We'll go for a walk while the baby **is sleeping**.

## INTERROGATIVE, NEGATIVE FORMS

In English every interrogative or negative sentence needs an ordinary verb and an auxiliary verb. (În limba engleză, propozițiile interogative și negative se formează cu verbul predicativ și un verb auxiliar) There are two kinds of questions (Există două feluri de întrebări):

- Yes/No questions - the answer can be only Yes or No (Întrebări închise, la care se poate răspunde prin Da sau Nu)
- Wh- questions – they start with a relative (Întrebări deschise, care se formează cu pronume și adverbe relative): who, what, which, when, where, how, why, how much, how many, how often
- If there is no auxiliary in the tense form, we add it (Dacă forma verbului nu conține un auxiliar, îl adăugăm):

	Wh-	Aux	S	Aux	V	O
Affirmative	You			write		letters
Yes/No question		Do	you	write		letters?
Wh-question	When	do	you	write		letters?
Negative	You			do not write (don't)		letters.

If there is an auxiliary in the tense form, there is inversion with the subject (Dacă forma verbului conține un auxiliar, îl inversăm cu subiectul):

	Wh-	Aux	S	Aux	V	O
Affirmative	You			are	writing	letters
Yes/No question		Are			writing	letters?
Wh-question	When	are	you		writing	letters?
Negative	You			are not	writing	letters.

NOTE: The question does not need an auxiliary if the Wh- relative is the subject;

Ex.:           Who do you meet?           Who meets you?  
                   What do you make?           What makes this noise?

You are going to study the negative and interrogative forms for each tense. (Veți studia formele negative și interogative ale verbului pentru fiecare timp gramatical.)

## PRESENT TENSE - EXERCISES

### ELEMENTARY

1. Read quickly in the singular (Citiți repede, punând subiectul și predicatul la singular):

1. They often go to the cinema.
2. My cousins work in Brasov.
3. They buy and sell cars.
4. Do they wash the windows every month?
5. Do your children play all the morning and sleep in the afternoon?
6. These apples are very green.
7. My friends do not (don't) eat meat. They are vegetarian.
8. The postmen bring the letters every day.
9. My brothers do not (don't) like my new dress.
10. They live in small houses which have only three rooms.

2. Put the verb into the correct form. Pay attention to the underlined adverbs (Puneți verbul la forma corectă. Țineți cont de adverbele subliniate):

1. She ..... (go) to school every day.
2. We .....(learn) English now.
3. The sun always ..... (shine) in Egypt.
4. We ..... (be) 18 years old.
5. I often ..... (not/do) my homework, but I ..... (do) it now.
6. She ..... (be) late sometimes.
7. They rarely ..... (try) to be polite but their mother always ..... (try) to educate them."<sup>t</sup>
8. In that region it ..... (rain) twice a week.

### INTERMEDIATE

3. Put the verb into the correct form (Puneți verbul la forma corectă):

Example: Please don't make so much noise. I am studying (study).

Water boils (boil) at 100 degrees centigrade.

1. Be quiet! I ..... (try) to concentrate.
2. Look! It ..... (snow).
3. The sun ..... (rise) in the east and ..... (set) in the west.
4. What ..... (you / do) now.?
5. George ..... (not / go) to the theatre very often.
6. .... (you / speak) English?
7. Why ..... (you / look) at me like that? Did I say something wrong?
8. Why ..... (it / smell) like burnt meat.
9. I don't feel well. I ..... (not/ eat) anything today.
10. What ..... (it / mean) "to deceive"?

11. Ann ..... (not / watch) television usually.
12. Listen! Our neighbours ..... (shout) at each other again.
13. I ..... (not / like) cigarettes at all. But my husband  
.....  
(smoke) every day.
14. Let's go out. It ..... (not / rain) anymore.
15. "What ..... (you / do)?" "I'm an electrical engineer."
16. The little girl broke her toy. That is why she ..... (cry) now.
17. Aunt Mary has been ill, but now she ..... (get) better.

### ADVANCED

4. Rewrite each sentence so that it contains the words in capitals, and so that the meaning stays the same:

Example: What's your opinion of Ted's new book? (THINK)  
What do you think of Ted's new book?

1. Nigel keeps interrupting me.(ALWAYS)
2. What is the meaning of this word? (DOES)
3. The number of people who own bicycles is increasing. (MORE)
4. What about going to that new film tonight? (HOW)
5. What is the weight of that piece of meat? (HOW MUCH)
6. Never mind about the price, just buy it! (MATTER)
7. There's a smell of onions in the room. (LIKE)
8. What is inside this box? (CONTAIN)
9. What's on your mind in this moment? (ARE)
10. Who is the owner of this watch? (BELONG)

5. Complete with the right aspect of the Present Tense.

1. He ..... (to catch) a cold every time it .....(to get) cold.
2. Poor John! He .....(to have) a bath now and he .....(not to have) any soap. It  
..... (not to matter) now.
3. .... the food ..... (to taste) good? I ..... (not to know). Mother  
..... (to taste) it now.
4. What ..... the husband and the wife ..... (to do) now? They ..... (to  
argue) and they ..... (not to agree) on anything.
5. This is our itinerary. We ..... (to leave) home on the 4th, ..... (to arrive) in  
London on the 5th, ..... (to spend) a day in town and ..... (to set out) the next day  
to visit Stratford-upon-Avon.
6. Usually, he ..... (to teach) French, but this year he ..... (to work) as a civil  
servant.
7. They ..... (to walk) in the park tomorrow. It will certainly be sunny.
8. What ..... (to happen) in the boys' room? They ..... (to begin) a new  
play right now.
9. The MP ..... (to admit) his involvement in the game.

## SIMPLE PAST TENSE

### FORM

The SIMPLE PAST in regular verbs is formed by adding -ED to the infinitive. The irregular verbs vary considerably in their past form (see list).

(Trecutul simplu - se formează adăugând terminația -ED la infinitivul verbelor regulate; - are forme distincte pentru verbele neregulate (cf. lista de la sfârșitul acestei lecții)

**Affirmative:** I (You/He/She/It/We/You/They) sang = Eu am cântat  
I (You/He/She/It/We/You/They) worked = Eu am lucrat

**Interrogative:** Did you sing / work ? = Tu ai cântat /lucrat?

**Negative:** You did not (didn't) sing I work. = Tu nu ai cântat /lucrat?

**NOTE** for advanced students:

1. Spelling rules about doubling the final consonant from Present Continuous Tense (-l, 1 syllable, 2 syllables)

Ex.: **to travel - travelled, to stop - stopped, to admit - admitted**

2. Cons. + y => Cons. + IED Ex.: **to carry - he carried, to try- he tried**

Voc. + y => Voc. + YED Ex: **to obey-obeyed**

3. There are a few verbs with both regular and irregular **form:**

Ex.: **to build, built, built / builded, to learn, learnt / learned, to burn, burnt / burned**

### USES

It expresses:

1. actions completed in the past at a definite time (acțiuni petrecute într-un anumit moment din trecut și terminate)

a) the time is expressed (timpul poate fi exprimat)

Ex: I saw her **yesterday**.

**Adverbs:** yesterday, the day before yesterday, a week ago, last Monday etc

b) the time is asked for (timpul nu este exprimat dar este cerut)

Ex: **When** did you see her?

c) the time is not given but it is obvious (timpul nu este exprimat dar este evident)

Ex: My train was ten minutes late.

2. used with the adverb ONCE (se folosește în prezența adverbului 'odată')

Ex: **Once**, I saw him with an American girl. **Once upon a time**, there was a prince.....

3. past habits (instead of USED TO) (pentru acțiuni care au avut loc în mod obișnuit în trecut)

Ex.: He always took his umbrella when it rained. He used to take his umbrella. He would take...

**For advanced students:**

4. conditional clauses (second type)

Ex: If it **rained**, we **wouldn't go** to the theatre.

5. subjunctive clauses

Ex: **He behaves as if he didn't make** mistakes.

## PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE

### FORM

S + TO BE (past) + V + -ING

#### Affirmative:

I was singing = Eu cântam

We were singing = Noi cântam

You were singing = Voi cântați

You were singing = Tu cântai

He/she/it was singing = El/Ea cânta

They were singing = Ei/Ele cântau

**Interrogative:** Were you singing? = Tu cântai?

**Negative:** You were not (weren't) singing = Tu nu cântai

**Note for advanced students:** See the spelling from Present Continuous Tense

### USES

1. past actions without definite limits in time (pentru acțiuni care au avut loc în trecut, pentru care nu se specifică perioada)

a) the time is not expressed (timpul nu este exprimat). Ex.: It was getting darker.

b) used with a point in time (există un reper înainte de care și după care a avut loc acțiunea).

Ex.: We were sleeping at 8 o'clock yesterday.

c) the time is expressed by a simple past action (momentul reper este exprimat printr-o acțiune la perfect compus. Ex: I was studying when the phone rang.

2. in descriptions (în descrieri)

Ex: The sun was shining and the two ladies were walking in the wood.

#### For advanced students:

3. in Indirect Speech, instead of Present Continuous

Ex.: He said he was washing his car that day.

4. instead of Simple Past - shows irony, annoyance

Ex.: He was always ringing me up.

5. used as an alternative to the simple past to indicate a more casual, less deliberate action

Ex.: I was talking to Tom the other day. - nothing unusual a remarkable

I talked to Tom the other day. - it was my intention to do it

## PAST TENSE - EXERCISES

### ELEMENTARY

1. Write the following in a) PAST SIMPLE TENSE; b) In PAST SIMPLE TENSE NEGATIVE (Scrieți următoarele propoziții la forma de a) PAST SIMPLE TENSE; b) in PAST SIMPLE TENSE NEGATIVE):

1. I break a cup. ....
2. It begins to rain. ....
3. They have a car. ....
4. She comes to school early. ....
5. They buy a new house. ....
6. You wear a nice dress. ....
7. He teaches English. ....
8. We ring the bell. ....
9. I say "O K." ....
10. It costs a lot of money. ....
11. She tells us a story. ....
12. He takes a final decision. ....
13. I wake up at seven. ....
14. I choose a book. ....
15. She knows his name. ....
16. We go out every day. ....
17. John writes novels. ....
18. They understand the lesson ....
19. We eat bread and butter. ....
20. Someone steals the documents.....

2. **Read the following as a question** (Puneți propozițiile următoare la forma interogativă):

1. Jack went to a shop. ....
2. She took his hat from the chair. ....
3. He sat down in an armchair. ....
4. Tom fell and broke his leg. ....
5. Mike knew French. ....
6. Ann found my identity card.....
7. Father paid the bill. ....
8. They read that novel.....
9. He heard the gossips.....
10. The sun rose earlier last month. ....
11. She sang her favourite song. ....
12. Mrs. Peter taught the lesson. ....
13. She told the truth. ....
14. We fought for our rights. ....
15. He shut the door. ....
16. She felt better last week. ....
17. The child drew a tree. ....
18. She forgot the answer. ....
19. They drove fast. ....
20. They sold their jewels.....

3. Complete the missing verb forms and the translations (Completați formele verbale care lipsesc și traduceți verbele):

1. to be	
2.	had
3.	begun
4.	a cânta
5. to break	
6. to choose	
7.	took
8.	forgotten
9.	eaten
10.	a aduce
11.	a desena
12. to know	
13.	said
14.	made
15. to do	
16.	a adormi
17. to leave	
18.	told
19. to write	
20.	a costa

### INTERMEDIATE

4. Complete with the most appropriate Past Tense (Simple or Continuous) (Puneți verbul la forma corectă - Past Simple sau Past Continuous):

1. Yesterday, at 8.00 a.m. Mary and Bob ..... (have) dinner.
2. Tom ..... (not/shave) yesterday because .....(no/have) time.
3. Tom usually walks to school but last week he ..... (drive) his own car because he .....(be) late.
4. When the fire alarm ..... (ring) in the hotel, Ann ..... (write) a letter in her room, George ..... (get ready) to go out, Sheila and Ken ..... (have dinner) and I ..... (make) a phone call.
5. She ..... (buy) the book because she ..... (be) interested in it.
6. What ..... (you/do) at this time yesterday?
7. They ..... (drive) very fast when the accident ..... (happen)
8. The children ..... (sleep) when their mother .....(enter) their room.

5. Decide whether the verbs in these sentences are right or wrong. Correct the wrong ones. (Precizați dacă verbele din aceste propoziții sunt folosite corect sau nu. Corecțați-le pe cele greșite):

Examples:

1. What did you doing yesterday on this time? WRONG - were you doing
2. My parents were living in Craiova in 1977. RIGHT
3. I don't knew about your new job. Congratulations! \_\_\_\_\_
4. I thiked that you were my best friend. \_\_\_\_\_
5. She was listening to the radio news yesterday at 8.00 p.m \_\_\_\_\_
6. You wasn't at school last week. Why? \_\_\_\_\_
7. When I came home, Mum was cook dinner. \_\_\_\_\_
8. I hope you didn't mind when I smoked in the room. \_\_\_\_\_



## PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE TENSE

### FORM

S + HAVE/HAS + V<sub>3</sub>

**Affirmative:** I have sung = Eu am cântat / He has worked = El a lucrat

**Interrogative:** Have you sung / worked ? = Tu ai cântat /lucrat?

**Negative:** You have not (haven't) sung / worked. = Tu n-ai cântat /lucrat?

**Interrogative negative** Haven't you sung? I Have you not sung? = N-ai cântat?

### USES

1. for a past action, when the time is not expressed (pentru acțiuni trecute, când timpul nu este specificat)

Ex: **I have written a letter. / I wrote a Letter yesterday.**

or with adverbs that do not express a certain past moment (sau cu adverbe care nu exprimă clar momentul din trecut): always, never, ever, so far, often, sometimes, rarely, seldom

Ex.: **I have never written such a long letter.**

2. for an action that has taken place recently (pentru acțiuni care au avut loc recent)

Ex: **He hasn't written a line, lately.**

Adverbs: recently, lately, just, already, yet.

3. when it is expressed the beginning (SINCE) or the duration (FOR) of an action that has been completed recently (când se specifică de când sau de cât timp a început acțiunea care a fost terminată recent)

Ex: **I have smoked since 1996. I have smoked for 2 years.**

**BUT: I smoked when I was in the army**

4. when the period of time that includes the moment the action took place is not completed (când nu s-a terminat perioada de timp care include momentul în care a avut loc acțiunea)

Ex: **I have written my homework this morning. (it is 11.30)**

**I wrote my homework this morning (it is 15.30)**

Adverbs: today, this afternoon, this week, this year

### NOTES for advanced students:

1. A conversation usually begins with Present Perfect (1<sup>st</sup> question, 1<sup>st</sup> answer) and goes on with Past Tense

Ex.: **Have you seen the movie I told you about**

**Yes, I've seen that movie. It was rather bad.**

2. It is the tense used in TV and newspapers news.

3. Negative Present Perfect + FOR = Affirmative Past Tense + AGO

Ex: **I haven't smoked for three years = I smoked three years ago.**

## PRESENT PERFECT TENSE - CONTINUOUS ASPECT

### FORM

S + TO BE (Present Perfect) + V + -ING

**Affirmative:** I have been singing = Eu cânt  
He/she/it has been singing = El/Ea cântă

**Interrogative:** Have you been singing? = Tu cânți?

**Negative:** You have not (haven't) been singing = Tu nu cânți.

**Negative Interrogative** Haven't you been singing ?  
Have you not been singing? = Tu nu cânți?

### USES

- I. with actions that started at a given moment in the past and are still going on. (pentru acțiuni care au început într-un anumit moment în trecut și continuă și în prezent)  
Either the beginning of the action (SINCE) or the duration up to the present moment (FOR) are expressed (Se specifică fie momentul începerii acțiunii, fie perioada de când a început)

Ex: **I have been smoking since 1996. = Fumez din 1996**

**I have been smoking for 2 years = Fumez de 2 ani**

There are three English tenses that correspond to the Romanian present tense (Prezentului românesc îi corespund trei timpuri din limba engleză):

- > Present Tense Simple: **I smoke from time to time. = Fumez din când în când**
- > Present Tense Continuous: **I am smoking now = Fumez acum.**
- > Present Perfect Continuous: **I have been smoking for two years. = Fumez de doi ani**

The difference is given by the adverbs, which play an important role in choosing the tense of the verb. (Adverbele sunt cele care dau diferența, ele jucând un rol important în alegerea timpului gramatical.)

### NOTE for advanced students:

There are verbs which can be used both with, Simple and with Continuous Present Perfect: expect, hope, learn, lie, live, look, rain, sleep, sit, snow, stand, stay, study, teach, wait, want, work

Ex.: **He has lived here for six weeks. / He has been living here for six weeks.**

There are verbs that do not accept the continuous aspect: to be, to have, to know.

Ex: **They've always had this big garden\_ = Ei au dintotdeauna această grădină mare.  
How long have you known him? = De când îl cunoști?**

## PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE - EXERCISES

### ELEMENTARY

**1. Complete the gaps putting the verb into the PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE TENSE** (Completați spațiile libere conjugând verbul din paranteze la PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE TENSE):

1. Lots of things ..... (happen) since I last wrote to you.
2. Tom is looking for his key. He can't find it. He ..... (lose) it.
3. Would you like something to eat? No, thank you, I ..... (just have) dinner.
4. Don't forget to post the letter. I ..... (already post) it.
5. What's the most beautiful country you ..... (ever see)?
6. Sue is riding a horse for the first time. She ..... (never ride) a horse before.
7. They..... (not visit) us for a long time.
8. .... (you/ play) tennis recently?
9. I ..... (not have) a holiday this year.
10. I ..... (write) a lot of Christmas cards lately.
11. We ..... (not see) Tom in the last few days
12. I ..... (not read) much of this book so far.

**2. Complete the blanks in the following sentences using for or since** (Completați spațiile libere din propozițiile următoare cu adverbele for sau since):

1. I haven't seen you ..... Christmas / ..... three days.
2. She hasn't spoken to me ..... an hour and a half / ..... January.
3. We've been here ..... more than two weeks / ..... last week.
4. They have lived in this street ..... 1919/ ..... the last ten years.
5. I haven't time to do it ..... I got ill / ..... last Monday.
6. We haven't bought candies ..... a week / ..... ages / ..... a long time.
7. I haven't eaten any meat ..... over a year / ..... I was a boy.
8. I haven't ridden a bicycle ..... longer than I can remember/ ..... my childhood.

### INTERMEDIATE

**3. Put the verb into the correct form: PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE (I have done) or PAST SIMPLE TENSE (I did)** (Puneți verbele din paranteză la timpul potrivit: PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE (I have done) sau PAST TENSE (I did):

Examples: 1. I have lost (lose) my glasses. I can't find them any where.

2. Did you see (you/see) that movie last night?

3. Jane ..... (buy) a new dress two weeks ago.
4. His hair is very short. He..... (just / have) a haircut.
5. Last night I ..... (arrive) home at half past ten. I ..... (have) a bath and then I ..... (go) to bed.
6. .... (you/visit) many museums when you were in Paris?
7. My bicycle isn't here anymore. Somebody ..... (take) it.
8. When ..... (you/give up) smoking? I ..... (not smoke) for three months.
9. I ..... (not eat) anything today because I ..... (not feel) very well, but I surely ..... (eat) too much yesterday.

10. Why ..... (Jim/not/want) to play tennis last Friday? I don't know, he ..... (not/play) today either.
11. The car looks very clean. .... (you/wash) it?
12. I'm afraid you can't talk to John now. He.....(just/go) out. He (leave) .....the office five minutes ago.

4. Make sentences using the verb on the right at the tense required and paying attention to the used adverb (Construiți propoziții folosind verbul din coloana din dreapta la timpul cerut în capul tabelului și utilizând adverbul cerut):

PAST SIMPLE TENSE	PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE	VERB
Yesterday	no time expression	see
the day before yesterday	recently	write
last week	lately	not meet
Three months ago	just	lose
last summer	already	go
in 1995	yet	finish
When they married	always	be happy
long ago	never	climb
before christmas	ever	sing
first time they met	so far	lie
in the army	for	smoke
as a child	since	sleep
last year	this year	buy
When?	how long?	wait
What time?	since when?	watch

5. **Decide whether the verbs in these sentences are right or wrong. Correct the wrong ones.** (Precizați dacă verbele din aceste propoziții sunt folosite corect sau nu. Corecțați-le pe cele greșite):

Examples:

1. Have you heard? Suzanne has got married. RIGHT
2. The Chinese have invented printing. WRONG - invented
3. Who has written the play Hamlet? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Aristotle has been a Greek philosopher. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Ow! I've cut my finger It's bleeding. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Look at George! He bought a new car. \_\_\_\_\_
7. My grandparents got married in London. \_\_\_\_\_
8. He worked a lot recently, so he deserves a good pay. \_\_\_\_\_
9. He has always been a good friend to me. \_\_\_\_\_
10. He has kept a book store long ago, in his youth. \_\_\_\_\_

## ADVANCED

6. Rewrite each sentence so that it contains the word in capitals and so that the meaning stays the same. Do not change the words.

1. You have missed the beginning of the film.           ALREADY  
.....
2. I don't know why I was sneezing that much. Luckily it stopped.   FOR 10 MINUTES  
.....
3. Paul is different from what he used to be.           HAS  
.....
4. We moved in this house ten years ago.           LIVED  
.....
5. Eating Chinese food is new to me.           BEFORE  
.....
6. Is there any news?           HAPPENED  
.....
7. I don't know where my keys are.           LOST  
.....
8. Sue is out but the door is unlocked.           HAS  
.....
9. Jane is still doing her homework instead of playing.   YET  
.....

7. Translate into English:

1. Nu mi-ai spus niciodată de ce ai reacționat în felul acela la nunta ta.  
.....
2. Este cel mai absurd lucru pe care l-am auzit vreodată.  
.....
3. Când l-ai văzut pentru prima oară?  
.....
4. L-am așteptat ieri aproape o oră dar nu a venit.  
.....
5. Toata lumea este prezentă. Doar nepotul ei nu a venit.  
.....
6. Ai citit cartea? Încă nu am terminat-o dar mi-a plăcut ce am citit până acum.  
.....
7. Nu l-am mai văzut de când a plecat din țară.  
.....
8. Shakespeare a scris multe piese.  
.....
9. Fratele meu a scris câteva piese de teatru. Tocmai și-a terminat a doua tragedie.  
.....
10. Când s-a căsătorit sora ta?  
.....
11. De când e căsătorită sora ta?  
.....

## PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS – EXERCISES

### ELEMENTARY

1. Complete the gaps putting the verb into the PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE (Completați spațiile libere conjugând verbul din paranteză la PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE):

1. I ..... (live) here since 1928.
2. The cat ..... (sit) in front of the fire since tea-time.
3. I ..... (look) at this picture for five minutes but I can't see you in it.
4. I'm afraid you ..... (look) at the wrong one.
5. I know you ..... (talk) about grammar for the last half-hour, but I'm afraid I ..... (not listen).
6. .... (you/wait) for me long?
7. Yes! I ..... (stand) here in the rain for half an hour.
8. He ..... (learn) English for three years, but he can't even read a newspaper yet.
9. What ..... (you/do) while I have been out? We..... (sit) here writing our homework, but it's not quite finished yet.
10. He ..... (work) in the Post Office for twenty years.
11. Lunch is not quite ready yet, although I ..... (cook) all the morning.
12. She ought to stop work; she has a headache because she ..... (read) too long.
13. They are tired because they ..... (work) in the garden since nine o'clock.

2. Say how long the following activities have been happening. (Spuneți de cât timp au loc activitățile următoare):

Example: It is raining now. It began raining two hours ago.  
It has been raining for two hours.

1. Kevin is studying. He began studying three hours ago.  
.....for three hours.
2. I'm learning Spanish. I started learning Spanish in December.  
.....since December.
3. Ann is looking for a job. She began looking six months ago.  
.....for six months.
4. Mary is working in London. She started working there on 18 January.  
.....since 18 January.
5. George smokes. He started smoking five years ago.  
.....for five years.

3. Ask questions starting with how long. (Puneți întrebări folosind adverbul how long = de cât timp):

Example: It is raining.

How long has it been raining?

1. My foot is hurting. How long .....
2. Mike is playing chess. How.....
3. Jim sells washing machines. ....
4. Tom is living in High Street. ....
5. They are playing the piano. ....
6. The kid is making noise. ....
7. I teach English. ....

### INTERMEDIATE

4. Put the verb into the correct form: PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE (I have done) or PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS (I have been doing). (Puneți verbul din paranteză la timpul corect: PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE (I have done) sau PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS (I have been doing):

Example: I have lost (lose) my glasses. I have been looking (look) for them for 15 minutes and I haven't found (not find) them yet.

1. I ..... (not see) you for a long time.
2. He ..... (not be) here since Christmas; I wonder where he ..... (live) since then.
3. I ..... (try) to learn English for years, but I ..... (not succeed) yet.
4. We ..... (live) here for the last six months, and ..... (just/decide) to move.
5. That book ..... (lie) on the table for weeks. .... (you/read) it yet?
6. I ..... (wait) here for her since seven o'clock and she ..... (not come) yet.
7. Since you gave me your number I ..... (phone) you four times and ..... (not find) you at home.
8. .... (you/be) asleep all the morning? I ..... (ring) the bell for the last twenty minutes.
9. She ..... (work) so hard this week that she ..... (not have) time to go to the hairdresser's.
10. I ..... (not find) a wife, though I ..... (look) for one ever since I was twenty.

5. Put the verb into the correct form: PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE (I have done) or PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS (I have been doing) (Puneți verbul din paranteză la timpul corect: PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE (I have done) sau PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS (I have been doing):

Example: Tom is reading a book. He started two hours ago and he is on page 53. He has been reading (read) for two hours. / He has read (read) 53 pages so far.

1. Linda is from Australia. Now she is travelling round Europe. She began her tour three months ago.  
..... (travel) for three months.  
.....(visit) six countries so far.
2. Jim is a tennis champion. He began playing tennis when he was 11 years old. Now he has just won the national championship for the fourth time.  
..... (play) tennis since he was 11.  
..... (win) the national championship four times.
3. Bill and Andy make films. They started making films together when they left college. They are making now their 11<sup>th</sup> film.  
..... (make) films since they left college.  
..... (make) ten films by now.
4. Ann is at the desk writing letters. She started at 2 o'clock. Now she is writing the third one.  
..... (write) letters since 2 o'clock.  
..... (write) two letters up to now.
5. We are walking on the beach. We started three hours ago and we are reaching the eleventh kilometer now.  
..... (walk) for three hours.  
..... (walk) 10 km so far.
6. Put the verb into the correct form: PRESENT CONTINUOUS (I am doing) or PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS (I have been doing) (Puneți verbul din paranteză

la timpul corect: PRESENT CONTINUOUS (I am doing) sau PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS (I have been doing):

1. What ..... (you/do) now? I ..... (read). I ..... (read) since three o'clock.
2. It is dark and it ..... (rain). It ..... (rain) for two days, I wonder when it will stop.
3. Those young people in the front apartment ..... (dance) for four hours. And they ..... (talk) too loud now.
4. Sorry, what ..... (you/say)? I ..... (think) of something else for the last couple of minutes.
5. What ..... (write)? I ..... (try) to write this exercise for a quarter of an hour.
6. Where is Tom? He is in his room and he ..... (look) at the stamp album. He ..... (arrange) stamps for an hour.
7. I ..... (work) in this company for 10 years. Now I ..... (run) the Marketing Department.
8. Grandfather ..... (lie) on the coach. He ..... (rest) there all the afternoon.

### ADVANCED

#### 7. Translate into English:

1. Noi lucrăm la acest proiect de cinci luni.  
.....
2. De zece ani călătoresc cu autobuzul așa că este timpul să îmi cumpăr o mașină.  
.....
3. De zece minute pun aceeași întrebare dar nimeni nu mi-a răspuns încă.  
.....
4. De o jumătate de oră încerc să prind legătura telefonică cu New York. Am să renunț.  
.....
5. Plouă des în Franța? Nu, dar acum plouă de două săptămâni și nu pare să se oprească.  
.....
6. Mary se tot întâlnește cu Mr Smith de o vreme. Crezi că se întâmplă ceva între ei? Nu știi că și-au anunțat logodna?  
.....
7. Îl cunosc de 10 ani dar niciodată nu m-a dezamăgit.  
.....
8. Ei locuiesc în acest cartier de câțiva ani dar nu își cunosc încă vecinii.  
.....
9. Cum se numește cartea despre care îmi vorbești? Îți vorbesc despre ea de o oră și tu nu știi cum se numește?  
.....
10. Băiețelul meu desenează de la trei ani. Sunt încântată că desenează atât de frumos.  
.....

## PAST PERFECT TENSE - SIMPLE ASPECT

### FORM

S + HAD + V (III)

**Affirmative:** I (You / He / She / It / We / You / They) had sung = Eu cântasem

**Interrogative:** Had you sung / worked ? = Tu cântasei/muncisei?

**Negative:** You had not (hadn't) sung / worked. = Tu nu cântasei/muncisei?

**Interrogative negative** Hadn't you sung? /Had you not sung? = Tu nu cântasei  
/muncisei?

### USES

1. for a past action performed before another past action (pentru o acțiune trecută care a avut loc înaintea altei acțiuni trecute):  
Ex: I had written a letter before you came. = Scrisesem/Am scris o scrisoare înainte să vii tu.

Adverbs: before, after, when, as soon as, etc.

#### **For advanced students:**

2. in Sequence of Tenses, instead of Past Tense and Present Perfect Tense  
Ex: I didn't work yesterday.  
He told me he hadn't worked the day before.  
I have never seen this movie.  
He told me he had never seen that movie.
3. in Conditional Clauses -type III  
Ex.: I would have gone to the theatre if it hadn't rained.

## PAST PERFECT TENSE - CONTINUOUS ASPECT

### FORM

S + TO BE (Past Perfect) + V + -ING

**Affirmative:** I had been singing = Eu cântasem  
= Eu cântam (de atât timp, când s-a întâmplat ceva)

**Interrogative:** Had you been singing? = Tu cântasei?  
= Tu cântai?

**Negative:** You had not (hadn't) been singing = Tu nu cântasei.  
= Tu nu cântai.

**Negative Interrogative** Hadn't you been singing ? / Had you not been singing?  
= Tu nu cântasei?  
= Tu nu cântai?

## USES

1. for a continuous past action performed before another past action (pentru o acțiune trecută, prezentată în desfășurare, care a avut loc înaintea altei acțiuni trecute):  
Ex: He was tired because he had been working since dawn = El era obosit pentru că muncise din zori.
2. for an action that started at a given moment in the past and was still going on at another past moment (past for Present Perfect Continuous). (pentru o acțiune care se afla în desfășurare la un moment dat din trecut, precizându-se de când (since) sau de cât timp (for) avea loc acțiunea):

Adverbs: for, since + a determined point in time

Ex: He had been waking in the garden for 2 hours when we arrived. = El muncia în grădină de două ore când am ajuns noi.

## PAST PERFECT - EXERCISES

### ELEMENTARY

1. Complete the gaps putting the verb into the PAST PERFECT SIMPLE TENSE (Completați spațiile libere conjugând verbul din paranteze la PAST PERFECT SIMPLE TENSE):

You went back to your home town after many years and you found that many things were different. (V-ați întors în orașul natal după mulți ani și ați găsit multe lucruri schimbate):

1. Most of my friends were no longer there. They ..... (leave).
  2. The local cinema was no longer open. It ..... (close) down.
  3. Mr. Johnson was no longer alive. He ..... (die).
  4. I didn't recognise Mrs. Johnson. She .....(change) a lot.
  5. Bill no longer had his car. He ..... (sell) it..
2. Complete the gaps putting the verb into the PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE (Completați spațiile libere conjugând verbul din paranteze la PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE):  
Example: The two boys came into the house. One had a black eye and the other had a broken arm. They had been fighting (fight).
  1. Tom was watching television. He was feeling very tired. He ..... (study) hard all day.
  2. When I walked into the room, it was empty. But there was a smell of cigarettes. Somebody .....(smoke) in the room.
  3. When Mary came back from the beach, she looked very red from the sun. She ..... (lie) in the sun too long.
  4. The two boys came into the house. They had a football and they were both very tired. They .....(play) football.
  5. Ann woke up in the middle of the night. She was frightened and she didn't know where she was. She ..... (dream).

### INTERMEDIATE

3. Put the verb into the correct form: PAST PERFECT (I had done) or PAST SIMPLE (I did) (Conjugăți verbele din paranteze la timpul corect: PAST PERFECT (I had done) sau PAST SIMPLE (I did)):

Example: Was Tom there when you arrived? No, he had gone (go) home.

Was Tom there when you arrived? Yes, but he went (go) home soon afterwards.

1. The house was very quiet when I got home. Everybody..... (go) to bed.
2. I felt very tired when I got home, so I ..... (go) straight to bed.
3. Sorry I'm late. The car ..... (break) down on my way here.
4. There was a car by the side of the road. It ..... (break) down and the driver was trying to repair it. So we ..... (stop) to see if we could help.
5. I..... (eat) a lot yesterday, before I ..... (go) to bed.
6. He ..... (drink) a glass of wine after he ..... (drive) the car.
7. They ..... (go) home after they ..... (finish) their work.
8. My younger brother ..... (eat) all the pie before we ..... (get) back.
9. We ..... (hear) that a fire ..... (break out) in the neighbouring house.
10. The moment after I ..... (tell) her not to, Maisie ..... (do) it again.

### ADVANCED

4. Put the verb into the correct form: PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS (I had been doing) or PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE (I was doing):

Example: We began playing football. After half an hour there was a terrible storm.

We had been playing for half an hour when there was a terrible storm.

1. The orchestra began playing at the concert. After about ten minutes a man in the audience suddenly began shouting.  
The orchestra ..... for about ten minutes when .....
  2. I had arranged to meet Tom in a restaurant. I arrived and began waiting. After 20 minutes I realised that I had come to the wrong restaurant.  
I ..... when I .....
  3. Mr. and Mrs. Jenkins went to live in the south of France. Six months later Mr Jenkins died. They .....when .....
5. Put the verb into the correct form: PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS (I had been doing) or PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE (I was doing)
    1. Jane had tears in her eyes and her face was red. She ..... (cry).
    2. Jane had no more tears in her eyes but her face was red, showing her pain. She ..... (cry).
    3. Tom was leaning against the wall, out of breath. He ..... (run).
    4. I tried to catch Tom but I couldn't. He ..... (run) very fast.
    5. When I arrived, everyone was sitting round the table with their mouths full. They ..... (eat).
    6. When I arrived everyone was sitting round the table and talking. Their mouths were empty but their stomachs were full. They ..... (eat).
    7. When I arrived, Mary ..... (wait) for me. She was rather annoyed with me because I was late and she ..... (wait) for a very long time.

## FUTURE SIMPLE TENSE FORM

### FORM

S + SHALL/WILL + V (I)

**Affirmative:** I'll sing = Eu voi cânta.

**Interrogative:** Will you sing ? = Vei cânta?

**Negative** You will not (won't) sing = Tu nu vei cânta.

**Interrogative negative** Won't you sing? / Will you not sing? = Tu nu vei cânta?

### NOTE (OBSERVAȚIE):

Formerly SHALL was used with the 1st pers (sg & pl), but now only WILL is used, with all persons.

(În gramaticile vechi, SHALL se folosea pentru pers I, sg. și pl., dar în prezent WILL se folosește tot mai mult la toate persoanele).

**SHALL** acquired modal connotations (SHALL are puternice conotații modale, adică are sens propriu):

- PROMISE, DETERMINATION (promisiune, hotărâre)  
Ex: We shall fight and we shall win. = Vom lupta și vom învinge.  
Ex: I shall give you a doll. You shall have it. (I promise you) = Îți promit că îți voi da o păpușa.
- question-tag for the Imperative 1st pers întrebare disjunctivă - nu-i așa?  
- pentru imperativ, pers. I)  
Ex: Let's go, shall we? = Hai să mergem, vrei?
- suggestion (sugestie)  
Ex.: Shall we leave for Greece? = Să mergem în Grecia?
- polite offer (oferta politicoasă)  
Ex.: Shall I help you? = Pot să vă ajut?

**WILL** is used to express (WILL este folosit pentru a exprima):

- INTENTION (intenția)  
Ex: I will buy this car. = Intenționez să cumpăr această mașină.
- invitation (o invitație)  
Ex: Will you have a drink? = Doriți să beți ceva?
- a polite request (cerere politicoasă)  
Ex: will you help me to move the piano? = Vrei să mă ajuți să mut pianul?
- a command (un ordin)  
Ex: You will work 12 hours a day, is it clear? = Vei munci 12 ore pe zi, e clar?

### USES

1. to express future actions which we assume will take place or the speaker's opinion about future (pentru a exprima acțiuni despre care se presupune că vor avea loc în viitor sau pentru a exprima părerea vorbitorului despre viitor):  
Ex: Spring will come again. = Va veni primăvara iar.  
He will accept the managers offer. = Va accepta oferta directorului.  
I'm afraid/I think it will rain. = Mi-e teamă că va ploua.
2. in newspapers and news broadcasts, for formal announcements of future plans (în știrile scrise sau televizate, pentru anunțurile oficiale în legătură cu planurile de viitor):

Ex: The President will open the new airport tomorrow. = Președintele va deschide noul aeroport mâine.

NOTE: In conversations, the average speaker would normally use the Present Continuous or be going to. (In conversații, în limbajul familiar se folosesc mai ales Present Continuous sau be going to)

Ex: He is going to take a decision tomorrow / He is taking a... = Va lua o hotărâre mâine.

## FUTURE AND TEMPORAL CLAUSES

Rule: Future is never used in temporal clauses. Instead, there will be used:

- Present Tense - if the action in the temporal clause is simultaneous to the action in the main clause  
Ex: I will give her the book when I see her. = Îi voi da cartea când o voi vedea  
When I grow up, I'll become a doctor. = Când voi fi mare, voi fi doctor.
- Present Perfect Tense - if the action in the temporal clause is anterior to the one in the main clause  
Ex.: I'll leave the office only when I have finished my task. = Voi pleca de la birou numai după ce voi termina treaba.  
When you have read the book, will you lend it to me? = Îmi vei împrumuta cartea după ce o vei citi?

## FUTURE CONTINUOUS TENSE

### FORM

S + TO BE (future) + V + -ING

**Affirmative:** I'll be singing = Eu voi cânta

**Interrogative:** Will you be singing? = Tu vei cânta?

**Negative:** You will not (won't) be singing = Tu nu vei cânta.

**Negative Interrogative** Won't you be singing ? / Will you not be singing? = Tu nu vei cânta

### USES

I to express a continuous action at a certain point in time or interrupted by a future simple action (pentru a exprima o acțiune în desfășurare, la un anumit moment din viitor sau întreruptă de o acțiune viitoare punctuală)

Ex: I'll be watching the movie tomorrow at 9 p.m. = Mâine la ore 9 seara, mă voi uita la film.

He will be working when you arrive in Paris. I'm afraid he won't be able to pick you up from the railway station. = Când vei sosi în Paris, el va fi la muncă. Mi-e teamă că nu va putea să te ia de la gară.

### For advanced students:

2. to express future without intention: neutrality



**Negative Interrogative** Won't you have been singing? Will you not have been singing? =  
Nu vei fi cântând?

## USES

1. to express an action which at a given future time will be in the past, when the action is continuous (with adverbs: SINCE/FOR)  
Ex.: By the end of the month he will have been working here for ten years.

## OTHER MEANS OF EXPRESSING THE FUTURE

### THE PRESENT SIMPLE TENSE

- used to express an officially planned future action, see Present Simple Tense (exprimă o acțiune viitoare planificată în mod oficial, cf. Lecția Present Simple Tense)  
Ex.: My train leaves at 7.30 pm tomorrow. = Trenul meu pleacă mâine la 7.30 seara.

### THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE

- used to express a future action - unofficially planned, see Present Continuous (exprimă o acțiune viitoare planificată în mod neoficial, cf. Lecția Present Continuous)  
Ex: She is seeing him tomorrow.= Ea are întâlnire cu el mâine.

### TO BE GOING TO

1. used to express intention - there is the idea that some preparation for the action has already been made. Therefore, actions expressed by this form are considered very likely to be performed. (pentru a exprima intenția - se presupune că au fost făcute pregătiri în vederea executării acțiunii. De aceea, realizarea acțiunii în viitor este aproape sigură)  
Ex.: I'm going to meet Tom at the station at six. (Tom may get a surprise!)  
= La ora 6 îl voi aștepta pe Tom la gară. (este intenția mea, Tom s-ar putea să nu știe și să aibă o surpriză)  
I'm meeting Tom at the station at six (it implies an arrangement with Tom) -  
= La ora 6 îl voi aștepta pe Tom la gară. (Tom știe, este o acțiune planificată împreună)
2. it refers to the immediate or near future when used without a time expression (când momentul nu este exprimat, se referă la un viitor apropiat)  
Ex.: He is going to lend me his bicycle. (very soon) = Îmi va împrumuta bicicleta lui (foarte curând).
3. for prediction - it expresses the speaker's feeling of certainty. The time is usually not mentioned, but the action is expected to happen in the near or immediate future. (pentru a exprima predicția, siguranța vorbitorului în legătură cu acțiunea viitoare.) It may be used after verbs as: be sure/afraid, believe, think (poate fi folosit după verbe care exprimă opinia)  
Ex.: Look at those clouds! It's going to rain. = Privește norii! Sigur va ploua.

**For advanced students:**

### TO BE TO, TO BE ABOUT TO, TO BE ON THE POINT OF V-ING

- these three forms express a near future, on a scale of approaching the present moment: the last is the closest to the moment of speaking  
Ex.: He is to wave in a moment. => The conversation ended.  
He is about to leave. => He stood up and took his coat and his hat.

He is on the point of leaving. => The host saw him to the door.

## FUTURE-EXERCISES

### ELEMENTARY

1. Put the following into the FUTURE SIMPLE TENSE (Transformați propozițiile următoare la FUTURE SIMPLE TENSE):
2. We always ask that question.
3. You never answer me correctly without the help of that book.
4. I never believe you.
5. You don't understand it.
6. I know the answer now.
7. You work harder than ever.
8. He feels better after those pills.
9. I eat an orange every day.
10. It doesn't hurt you.
11. Why doesn't she drink her cocoa?

2. Make sentences with the FUTURE CONTINUOUS TENSE (Construiți propoziții cu verbe la FUTURE CONTINUOUS TENSE):

Example: I'm going to watch television from 9 until 10 o'clock this evening. So at 9.30 I will be watching television.

1. Tomorrow morning I don't want to wake up before 10 o'clock.  
So at 8 o'clock I ..... (sleep)
1. Ann is going to study from 2 o'clock to 6 o'clock this afternoon.  
So at 4 o'clock she.....(study)
3. They are going to fix the car tomorrow. It will take from noon till evening.  
So tomorrow afternoon they .....(fix)
4. Tom and Pam are going to the cinema tonight. The movie starts at 20.30 and ends at 23.00.  
So at 21.00 they ..... (watch)
5. My friend wants to buy Christmas presents. He will go shopping at 3 o'clock and he will finish in three hours' time. So at half past four he .....(shop)

3. Put the verb into the most suitable form, PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE (I am doing) or PRESENT SIMPLE TENSE (I do). Remember to use the former one for personal arrangements and the latter for timetables (Puneți verbele din paranteze la timpul potrivit, PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE (I am doing) sau PRESENT SIMPLE TENSE (I do). Folosiți primul timp pentru planuri viitoare personale și cel de-al doilea pentru acțiuni viitoare fixate după un orar sau program oficial):

1. We .....(go) to the theatre this evening.
2. Hurry up! The film ..... (begin) at 8.30.
3. We ..... (have) a party next week-end. Would you like to come?
4. George, is it true that you ..... (get) married next week?
5. What time .....(the next train/leave)?
6. The art exhibition ..... (open) on 3 May and ..... (finish) on 15 July
7. John, we ..... (go) to town. .... (you/come) with us?

4. **Express your intentions (I) or predictions (P) using GOING TO** (Exprimați intenția sau predicția folosind GOING TO):  
 Example: I didn't clean the car but I am going to clean (clean) it tomorrow.(I)

The sky is full of black clouds. It is going to rain (rain).(P)

1. Have you phoned Tom? No, but I ..... (phone) him after lunch.( )
- 2 Ted will take an exam tomorrow. He didn't study at all. He ..... (fail) ( )
3. Tom has bought a painting. Where ..... (hang) it?( )
4. Our flat is awful We.....(paint) it soon.( )
5. Tom must be in other part of the town in 5 minutes. He .....(be late) ( )
6. Oh, I feel terrible. I think I.....(be sick).( )

### INTERMEDIATE

4. Rephrase the following sentences using the suggested verb instead of SHALL or WILL (Reformulați următoarele propoziții folosind verbele sugerate în locul auxiliarelor SHALL sau WILL):

1. Will you have some more cake? (like)
2. Shall I get you another book? (want)
3. What will you do now? (mean)
4. You shall stay here till I come. (must)
5. We won't listen to him. (choose)
6. I won't do what you tell me. (refuse)
7. You shall have a new bicycle. (promise)
8. I think I shall go away next week-end. (hope)
9. The door bell is ringing. That will be John. (be sure)
10. He says he will get a rise next month. (expects)

5. In temporal clauses we do not use FUTURE. Use PRESENT for simultaneous actions and PRESENT PERFECT for anterior actions (În propozițiile temporale nu se folosește FUTURE, în limba engleză. Folosiți PRESENT pentru acțiuni simultane și PRESENT PERFECT pentru acțiuni anterioare):

1. We shall go as soon as you ..... (be) ready.
2. You had better wait until the police ..... (come).
3. I'll believe it when I ..... (see) it.
4. I'll give the book back as soon as I ..... (read) it.
5. I'll be ready before you ..... (count) ten.
6. I'll stay here until he ..... (answer) me.
7. You'll know him when you ..... (see) him.
8. We must wait until the waiter ..... (bring) the coffee.

### ADVANCED

6. Put the verb into the most suitable form, FUTURE PERFECT SIMPLE (I will have done) Or FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS (I will have been doing).

1. By next June he ..... (write) his second novel.
2. By next June he ..... (work) at his second novel for two years.
3. Before the end of the summer she ..... (teach) us to speak English.
4. Before the end of the summer she ..... (teach) us to speak English for 10 months.
5. By next month he ..... (sell) all his furniture.
6. By next month he .....(sell) furniture in his uncle's shop for a year.

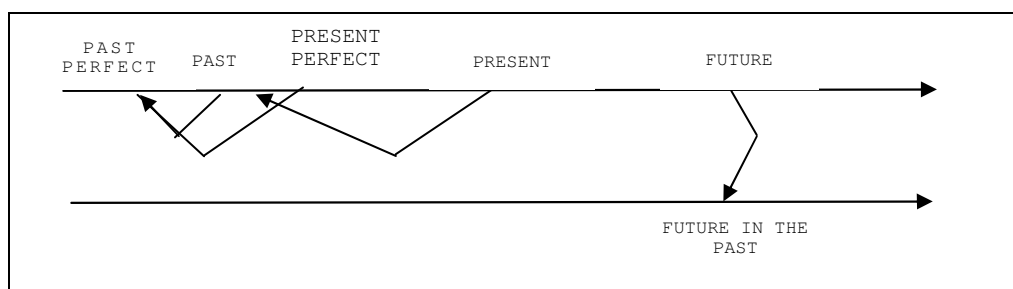
7. Put the verb in brackets into a suitable tense:
1. In twenty four hours' time I ..... (relax) on my yacht.
  2. There's someone at the door. That ..... (be) the postman.
  3. By the time you get back, Harry ..... (leave).
  4. It's only a short trip. I ..... (be) back in an hour.
  5. What ..... (do) this Saturday evening? Would you like to go out?
  6. By the end of the week we ..... (decide) what to do.
  7. It ..... (not be) long before Dr. Smith is here.
  8. I've pressed the red button. Now what ..... (I/do)?
  9. It's very hot in here I think she ..... (faint).
  10. What ..... (give) Ann for her birthday? Have you decided yet?
  11. By this evening I ..... (work) for this project for a week.

## REPORTED SPEECH

When passing from the direct speech to the reported speech, there are several changes that occur in the subordinate clause. (În trecerea de la vorbirea directă la cea indirectă, în propoziția secundară au loc mai multe schimbări.)

### VERB CHANGES

Let's represent the tenses we have studied on the axis of time, as well as the changes that occur in the subordinate clause, when the verb in the main clause is no longer at the present tense, but at a past tense (Reprezentăm mai jos axa timpurilor cu timpurile verbale studiate, precum și schimbările care apar la verbul din subordonată, atunci când timpul din principală trece de la prezent la trecut):



The Sequence of tenses occurs when we turn direct speech into indirect speech. The tense of the verb in the subordinate clause depends on the tense of the verb in the main clause. (Concordanța timpurilor apare la trecerea de la vorbirea directă la cea indirectă. Timpul verbului din subordonată depinde de timpul verbului din propoziția principală).

### WHEN IN THE MAIN CLAUSE (Când în propoziția principală):

- The verb is in a present, present perfect or future tense -> we can report the direct speech without any change of tense. (verbul este la un timp prezent sau viitor, în propoziția subordonată nu au loc schimbări la nivelul verbului).
- The verb is in a past tense -> verbs of the subordinate clause change into a corresponding past tense (as shown in the figure above) (verbul este la un timp trecut, în propoziția subordonată verbul trece la unul din timpurile specificate în figura de mai sus cu ajutorul săgeților):

**Ex - Direct Speech**

Tom says. I am very well now.  
acum.

But I was ill last week.  
bolnav.

I have swallowed a lot of pills these days.  
zilele

So I will not take medicine anymore.”

Tom Spune: Mă simt foarte bine

Dar săptămăna trecută am fost

Am înghițit o mulțime de pastile  
acestea.

Deci nu voi mai lua medicamente.

### - Indirect Speech

Tom says (that)	Tom said (that)
PRESENT he is very well now	PAST he was very well then.
PAST / PRESENT PERFECT he was ill last week he has swallowed a lot of pills these days.	PAST PERFECT he had been ill a week before. he had swallowed a lot of pills those days.
FUTURE he will not take medicine anymore	FUTURE IN THE PAST he would not take medicine anymore.

NOTE: These tenses refer to both aspects: simple and continuous. (Aceste schimbări au loc atât la aspectul simplu, cât și la aspectul continuu.)

The Imperative is turned into infinitive in indirect speech. (În vorbirea indirectă, imperativul se transformă în infinitiv, în limba engleză).

Ex He said: “Lie down, Tom, and don’t move” = He told Tom to lie down and not to move.

### QUESTIONS IN INDIRECT SPEECH

The following changes occur (La trecerea întrebărilor în vorbire indirectă, următoarele schimbări au loc):

- sequence of tenses (concordanța timpurilor):  
Ex: John asked: “Did you see Ann?”  
John asked me if I had seen Ann.
- the interrogative form of the verb changes to the affirmative form and the question mark is omitted (verbul trece de la forma interogativă la forma afirmativă și semnul întrebării dispăre).  
Ex: John asks : ”What does Ann want from me?”  
John doesn’t know what Ann wants from him.
- the introductory verb is one of inquiry: ask, inquire, wonder, want to know (verbul din propoziția principală exprimă întrebarea: a întreba, a iscodi, a se întreba, a vrea să știe)  
Ex: John said: “Am I wrong?”  
John wondered if he was wrong.
- for yes/no questions if or whether must be used (pentru întrebările închise, al căror răspuns poate fi da sau nu, în vorbirea indirectă conjuncția folosită este dacă) :  
Ex: He asked: ‘Are you tired?’ = He asked me if / whether I was tired.

### OTHER CHANGES IN INDIRECT SPEECH:

(Alte schimbări care au loc în trecerea de la vorbirea directă la vorbirea indirectă):

Pronouns and possessive adjectives change according to logical links (Pronumele personale, pronumele posesive și adjectivele posesive se schimbă în funcție de logica propoziției):

Ex.: I said: “I will help you with your homework”.

= Eu am spus: “Te voi ajuta să îți faci tema”.

I said that I would help you with your homework.

= Eu am spus că te voi ajuta să îți faci tema.  
 He said: "I will help you with your homework."  
 = El a spus: "Te va ajuta să îți faci tema".  
 He said to me that he would help me with my homework.  
 = El a spus că mă va ajuta să îmi fac tema".  
 He said to her that he would help her with her homework.  
 = El a spus că o va ajuta să își facă tema".

I -> he, she You -> me, her, him, etc.
---

- **Demonstrative adjectives** (Demonstrativele se modifică astfel):

this -> that these -> those
--------------------------------

Ex . He said: "I don't like this movie"  
 He said that he didn't like that movie.

- **Adverbs and adverbial phrases of time** (Adverbele de timp se modifică astfel):

<u>Direct Speech</u>	<u>Indirect Speech</u>
today yesterday the day before yesterday tomorrow the day after tomorrow next week/year/etc last week/year/etc a year/etc ago	that day the day before two days before the next/following day in two days' time the next / the following week/year/etc the previous week/etc/ the week before a year before / the previous year

**NOTE for advanced students:**

**EXCEPTIONS:**

1. past/past continuous tenses used in time clauses do not normally change:  
 Ex.: He said: "When we were travelling/travelled throughout Europe...."  
 He said that when they were travelling/ travelled throughout Europe...
2. a past tense used to describe a state of affairs which still exists when the speech is reported remains unchanged  
 Ex.: She said: "Washington Avenue is the longest street in the town".  
 She said that Washington Avenue is the longest street in the town.
3. unreal past tenses (subjunctives) do not change:  
 Ex.: "I wished he came here soon.", she said.  
 She said she wished he came there soon.
4. conditional sentences types 2 and 3 remain unchanged  
 Ex: "If we were older, we would marry.", said the teenager.  
 The teenager said that he and his girl friend would marry if they were older.

## OTHER NOTES:

1. In spoken English the Past Tense is often not changed into Past Perfect

Ex: He said: 'I received a letter.' - He said he received / had received a letter.

You are not advised to use the spoken English form.

## REPORTED SPEECH - EXERCISES

### ELEMENTARY

1. Change the PRESENT (SIMPLE/CONTINUOUS) by the PAST TENSE (SIMPLE/CONTINUOUS) if necessary (ÎNLOCUIȚI PRESENT (SIMPLE/CONTINUOUS) cu PAST TENSE (SIMPLE/CONTINUOUS) dacă e necesar):

Examples: 1. "I have a headache because I am watching TV without my glasses."

Grandma' **says** she has a headache because she is watching TV without her glasses.

Grandma' **said** she had a headache because she was watching TV without her glasses.

2. "We are worried about our son because he is missing school classes."

My parents say they ..... about me because I ..... school classes.

My parents said they ..... about me because I ..... school classes.

3. "My car breaks down very often; I 'm planning to sell it."

Our cousin says that his car. .... very often and that he ..... to sell it.

Our cousin said that his car ..... very often and that he ..... to sell it.

4. "I can't lend you the book as I am reading it now."

My classmate says he ..... lend me the book as he ..... it now. My

classmate said he ..... lend me the book as he ..... it then.

5. "I don't know who is carrying out this project."

The secretary says she ..... who ..... this project. The

secretary said she ..... who ..... that project.

2. Change the PAST TENSE OR PRESENT PERFECT by the PAST PERFECT TENSE if necessary (înlocuiți PAST TENSE OR PRESENT PERFECT CU PAST PERFECT TENSE acolo unde este necesar):

Examples: 1. 'I had a teeth problem last year but I have never eaten hard stuffs.'

Grandma says that she had a teeth problem last year but that she has never eaten hard stuffs.

Grandma said that she had had a teeth problem a year before but that she had never eaten hard stuffs.

2. "Bill passed his examination although I haven't seen him studying these days."

Mother says Bill .....his examination although she ....., him studying these days

Mother said Bill .....his exam though she ..... him studying those days.

3. "Ann has bought a car but last time I saw her she didn't have a driving licence."

John says Ann ..... a car and that the last time he ..... her she ..... a driving licence.

John said Ann ..... a car and that the last time he ..... her she ..... a driving licence.

4. "I woke up feeling ill and so I stayed in bed as I haven't done it for a long time.'  
 Tom says that he ..... feeling ill and so he ..... in bed as he ..... it for a long time.  
 Tom said that he ..... feeling ill and so he ..... in bed as he ..... it for a long time.

3. Change the FUTURE TENSE by the FUTURE IN THE PAST If necessary (Înlocuiți FUTURE TENSE CU FUTURE IN THE PAST acolo unde este necesar) :

Examples: 1. 'I will see a doctor tomorrow.'

Grandma' says that she will see a doctor tomorrow.

Grandma' said that she would see a doctor the next day.

2. "I will give up my job as soon as possible.'

My neighbour says he .....his job as soon as possible.

My neighbour said he ..... his job as soon as possible.

3. "My parents will be here next week.'

Tom says that his parents ..... here next week.

Tom said that his parents ..... there the next week.

4. "Bob and Mary will go away for a few days but they will phone us often.'

Dad says Bob and Mary.. ..... for a few days but they ..... us often.

Dad said Bob and Mary .....for a few days but they . ..... us often.

4. Put into Reported Speech using the verb indicated (Transformați în vorbirea indirectă folosind verbul indicat):

1. Go away! He told us .....

2. Come here! I asked him .....

3. Eat it up! Tell the child .....

4. Pay at once! They ordered us .....

5. Clean my shoes! I asked my brother .....

6. Sit down! The teacher said .....

7. Don't try to cheat! We were asked .....

8. Don't speak loud. They requested people .....

## INTERMEDIATE

5. Complete the following sentences with **said**, **told** or **talked**:

1. Tom .....that he didn't like Brian

2. Jack..... me that he was enjoying his new job.

3. Tom ..... to everybody his opinion about my book.

4. They ..... a lot about many trifles. Finally they ..... nothing.

5. The doctor ..... I would have to stay indoors for at least a week.

6. Diane ..... us she wouldn't come to the next meeting.

7. Ann ..... Michael she was leaving him for Bob.

8. At the meeting the chairperson ..... about the marketing problems.

9. Jane ..... I was allowed to leave earlier.

10. Don ..... not to wait for him if he was late.

6. Put the following sentences into Reported Speech using the introducing verb:

1. Where are you going? He asked me where I was going.

.....

2. Do I look all right? She didn't know whether she looked all right.  
.....
3. How : did you do that? They wanted to know  
.....
4. Who will come with me? He wondered  
.....
5. When will my dress be finished? She enquired  
.....
6. Has Bill helped you? She was curious to know  
.....
7. Which book are you taking? He urged me to say  
.....
8. Are you enjoying yourself? He politely asked me  
.....
9. Did Tom give Jane that ring? He wondered  
.....
10. Who showed you my work? He asked me straight  
.....
7. Tell a friend of yours what Charlie, a common friend, told you a few days before. Use the SEQUENCE OF TENSES and the other rules of INDIRECT SPEECH to change the underlined words:
1. I'm thinking of going to live in Canada.  
Charlie said that he was thinking of going to live in Canada.
  2. "My father is in hospital."  
Charlie said that.....
  3. My sister and her boyfriend are getting married next month.  
.....
  4. I haven't seen you for a while.  
.....
  5. I have been playing tennis a lot these days.  
.....
  6. Tom had an accident last week but he wasn't injured.  
.....
  7. I will be glad to spend the next holidays with you in London.  
.....
  8. I saw Mary at a party a few months ago but she didn't want to speak to me.  
.....
  9. I will go home and I am going to support my mother with her exhibition.  
.....
  10. I'm sorry I reacted this way at your words.  
.....

### ADVANCED

8. Match each report 1) to 10) with the actual words spoken from a) to j):

1. Jim admitted that he might have taken it.	a) No, I've definitely taken it
2. Sue denied that she had taken it	b) I don't think I took it.
3. Harry doubted whether he had taken it:	c) Don't worry, I've taken it. It's all right!
4. Diana explained that she had taken it.	d) What about me? Perhaps I took it?

5. Bill insisted he had taken it.	e) OK, perhaps I did take it after all.
6. Mary suggested that she had taken it.	f) Yes, I took it. I took it, I tell you.
7. Ted confirmed he had taken it.	g) Yes, that's quite correct. I took it.
8. Ruth claimed that she had taken it.	h) No, I certainly didn't take it. I can assure you.
9. Charles repeated that he had taken it.	i) You may not believe me, but actually I took it.
10. Sally reassured us that she had taken it.	j) You see, it's like this. I've taken it.

9. Rewrite each sentence in indirect speech beginning as shown:

1. "I wouldn't cook the fish for too long, Bill, if I were you", said Jean.  
Jean advised Bill.....
2. "Helen, would you like to come to lunch on Sunday?" said Mary.  
Mary.....
3. Well, in the end I think I'll take the brown pair, said the customer.  
The customer finally.....
2. "Me? No, I didn't take Sue's calculator", said Bob.  
Bob denied.....
5. "Don't forget to buy some milk, Andy", said Clare.  
Clare reminded.....
6. "Look, I might not be able to come on Saturday", said David  
David told us.....
7. "Why don't you go and see 'The Sound of Music' again, Brian?", I said.  
I suggested .....
8. "No, you really must stay the night, Sophia", Ann said.  
Ann insisted.....
9. "Make sure you don't take a fine in the rush hour, Tim.", said Jack.  
Jack warned.....
10. "You are not allowed to smoke in your room, Dan", said his mother.  
Dan's mother.....

## MODAL VERBS

### CHARACTERISTICS

- they have no to-infinitive (nu au particula to la infinitiv):  
Ex.: can = a putea //to see = a vedea
- they are followed by short infinitive (sunt urmate de infinitivul scurt, fără particula to):  
Ex.: I can swim. = Pot să înot. // I know to swim. = Știu să înot.
- they have no -S at the 3<sup>rd</sup> pers, sg, present (nu primesc -S la pers. a III-a sg., la timpul prezent)  
Ex.: He can do that because he knows it.  
= Poate să facă acest lucru pentru că știe cum.
- they have no auxiliaries for interrogative and negative forms (nu au nevoie de auxiliare pentru formarea interogativului și negativului)  
Ex: I can swim.      Can you swim?      No, I cannot.  
I swim.              Do you swim?      No, I do not.
- they have only the present form (nu se conjugă la alte timpuri în afară de prezent):  
Exception (Excepții):      can - could; may - might for past and conditional)  
Equivalent expressions (Pentru celelalte timpuri, se folosesc expresii echivalente):  
can = to be able to  
may = to be allowed to  
must = to have to

### MODAL VERBS

- |              |  |
|--------------|--|
| I. CAN       | VI. WILL                                 |
| II. MAY      | VII. SHOULD                              |
| III. MUST    | VIII. WOULD                              |
| IV. OUGHT TO | IX. NEED (semi-modal)                    |
| V. SHALL     | X. DARE (sometimes behaves like a modal) |

#### CAN

It expresses physical ability or mental potential to do something (Exprimă capacitatea fizică sau mentală - A PUTEA).

Ex: He cannot ride a horse. = El nu poate (nu știe) să călărească.  
She can read Russian. = Ea poate (știe) să citească în rusă.

#### COULD

- for Past Tense      Ex: He could speak German fluently when he was younger.  
= El putea să vorbească germana fluent când era mai tânăr.
- for Present Conditional      Ex: I could ask her to help you if you need it.  
= Aș putea să o rog să te ajute dacă e nevoie

#### COULD HAVE + V (III) - for the Past Conditional

Ex: He could have arrived earlier. = Ar fi putut să sosească mai devreme.  
She couldn't have come to our party, anyway. = Oricum, ea n-ar fi putut

veni la

petrecerea noastră.

**TO BE ABLE TO** - for the other tenses (se folosește pentru toate timpurile, mai ales la cele la care CAN nu poate fi folosit)

Ex.: They will be able to come here tomorrow = El va putea veni aici mâine.  
They had been able to buy a new house before selling the old one. = Putuseră să își cumpere o casă nouă înainte de a-și vinde vechea casă.

### NOTE for advanced students:

In the past, COULD cannot refer to one single successful achievement, in a particular situation.

Ex.: I ran fast and so I could catch the bus = not correct

I ran fast, so I was able to catch the bus. = correct

The negative COULDN'T is possible in all situations.

Ex. I ran fast but couldn't catch the bus.

It also expresses permission when the speaker is almost sure of having it. (exprimă permisiunea, când vorbitorul este aproape sigur că I se dă voie)

Ex.: Can I smoke here? (there is no restriction here) = Pot să fumez aici? (nu există nici un anunț cu 'fumatul interzis')

Usually, with may people ask permission, whereas with can people know they have permission (în general, cu may se cere voie, cu can se știe că este voie)

Ex.: Residents can use the car park without a ticket. = Locatarii pot (au voie) folosi parcare fără bilet de intrare.

### MAY

It expresses permission- (exprimă permisiunea)

Ex.: You may work in my office if you like. = Poți să lucrezi în biroul meu, dacă îți face plăcere.

May I borrow your car? No, you may not = Îmi dai voie să îți împrumut mașina? Nu, nu ei voie.

In informal English, can often replace may (În engleza familiară, se folosește adesea **can** în loc de **may**)

Ex.: May I open the window, Sir? (Can I open the window, Tom?)

**TO BE ALLOWED TO** - for all the tenses (se folosește pentru toate timpurile, **may** neputând fi folosit decât pentru prezent).

Ex.: I'll be allowed to drive when I'm eighteen. = Voi avea voie să conduc când voi avea 18 ani.

He would leave the country if I were allowed to. = El ar pleca din țară dacă ar avea voie.

### MUST, NEED, SHOULD, OUGHT TO

#### MUST

It expresses necessity, obligation. (Exprimă necesitatea, obligația)

Ex.: Candidates must answer the following questions. = Candidații trebuie să răspundă la următoarele întrebări.

Negation:

**MUST NOT** expresses interdiction, prohibition (exprimă interdicția)

Ex.: You mustn't go out. = Nu trebuie să ieși afară (pentru că nu ai voie sau nu e bine)

**NEED NOT DO NOT HAVE TO** express the lack of obligation (exprimă lipsa obligației)

Ex.: You needn't go out. = You don't have to go out. if isn't necessary) = Nu este nevoie să ieși afară

=Nu trebuie să ieși afară (dacă nu vrei)

## TO HAVE TO

- for all the tenses (se folosește pentru toate timpurile, must neputând fi folosit decât pentru prezent)

Ex . You will have to wait. = Va trebui să aștepti.

You had had to wait before you answered. =A trebuit să aștepti înainte de a răspunde.

**NOTE for advanced students:** In Reported Speech, MUST can be left unchanged.

Ex.: I said he must tell me the truth.

## NEED

It shows the **attitude of the speaker towards the obligation**. (Se traduce tot prin “trebuie”, dar arată atitudinea vorbitorului față de obligație)

Ex.: Need I get up so early? Yes. I'm afraid you must. = Chiar trebuie să mă trezesc așa devreme? Da, mi-e teamă că trebuie.

You needn't see the doctor I you don't want to. (my opinion is that it is not necessary) = Nu, trebuie să mergi la doctor dacă nu vrei. (păreră mea este că nu este necesar)

## SHOULD

It expresses present obligation, duty, moral obligation. Generally, it is used for advice, without imposing one's opinion. (Se traduce cu “ar trebui” și exprimă o obligație morală prezentă, o datorie. În general, se folosește pentru a exprima sfatul, lipsa impunerii opiniei cuiva)

Ex.: You should work a little more. = Ar trebui să lucrezi mai mult.

## OUGHT TO

It expresses the same as should, but the advice is stronger, more formal. (Exprimă același lucru ca și should, dar sfatul este mai puternic, mai oficial)

Ex.- Drivers ought to drive more carefully during night. = Șoferii ar trebui să conducă mai atent pe timp de noapte.

For past time reference - SHOULD / OUGHT TO + Perfect Infinitive

Ex.: You should have worked a little more. = Ar fi trebuit să lucrezi mai mult.

You ought to have driven more carefully. =Ar fi trebuit să conduci mai atent.

## NOTE:

SHOULD/OUGHT TO - possibility of non-action available.

MUST - never implies the idea of non-action

## SHALL

It expresses (exprimă):

- **promise, determination** (promisiune, hotărâre)

Ex: We shall fight and we shall win = Vom lupta și vom învinge.

Ex.: I shall give you a doll. You shall have it. (I promise you) = Îți promit că îți voi da o păpușă.

- obligation and necessity independent of human will, at any time (adevăr valabil, indiferent de voința umană)

Ex.: All shall die. = Toți vom muri.

- widely used in rhetorical questions (foarte folosit în întrebări retorice)

Ex.: What shall I do? Whom shall I help? = Ce să fac? Pe care s-o ajut?

- volitional obligation (2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> persons particularly) (obligație, mai ales folosit cu pers. I și a III-a)

Ex.: You shall do what you are told. = Vei face ce îți se cere.

- question-tag for the Imperative 1<sup>st</sup> pers (întrebare disjunctivă - nu-i așa? - pentru Imperativ, pers. I

Ex.: Let's go, shall we? = Hai să mergem, vrei?

- suggestion (sugestie)

Ex : Shall we leave for Greece? = Să mergem în Grecia? –

- polite offer (oferta politicoasă)

Ex.: Shall I help you? = Pot să vă ajut?

## WILL

It is used to express (este folosit pentru a exprima):

- intention, volition (intenția)

Ex: I will buy this car. = Intenționez să cumpăr această mașină.

Used in the negative: refusal. With inanimate: lack of activity (Folosit la negativ, exprimă refuzul. Dacă subiectul nu este ființă, exprimă lipsa activității)

Ex.: He won't do that. I say! = Îți spun că nu va vrea să facă asta

The door will not open. = Ușa nu vrea să se deschidă.

- invitation (o invitație) Ex: Will you have a drink? =Dorești să bei ceva?

- a polite request (cerere politicoasă)

Ex.: Will you help me to move the piano? = Vrei să mă ajuți să mut pianul?

- a command (un ordin)

Ex.: You will work 12 hours a day, is it clear? = Vei munci 12 ore pe zi, e clar?

## WOULD

- It replaces USED TO, expressing past repetitive actions. (Folosit, ca și USED TO, pentru a exprima acțiuni care obișnuiau să aibă loc în trecut. Este însoțit de obicei de adverbe de timp care arată frecvența sau timpul trecut). It usually goes with time adverbials: sometimes, often, occasionally, now and then, always, every day.

Ex: He would smoke a cigarette every day. = Obișnuia să fumeze o țigară pe zi.

Time adverbials are not necessary with USED TO. (În expresia USED TO sunt incluse ideea de frecvența și de perioada încheiată demult, adverbele nefiind necesare).

Ex.: He used to smoke. = Obișnuia să fumeze.

- past intention, past volition (intenție în trecut)

Ex.: When I needed him, he wouldn't help me. = Când am avut nevoie de el, nu a vrut să mă ajute.

- very polite offer or request (ofertă sau cerere foarte politicoasă)

Ex.: Would you please be so kind to help me with the luggage? = Sunteți amabil să mă ajutați să duc bagajul?

Would you like some more tea? = Mai doriți ceai?

## DARE

It is a semi-modal verb. It expresses courage, independence. (Este un verb semi-modal și se traduce prin a îndrăzni').

Ex: How dare she / does she dare to misinform him? =Cum îndrăznește să îl informeze greșit?

## RELATED NON-MODAL EXPRESSIONS

WOULD RATHER - it shows the preference. (Exprimă preferința).

Ex : I would rather go there. = Aș prefera să merg acolo. I'd rather you went there. = Aș prefera ca tu să mergi acolo. (Synthetic Subjunctive)

HAD BETTER - it is a recommendation and refers only to the present or future (Exprimă recomandarea, se referă numai la prezent sau la viitor)

Ex.: You'd better not phone her again. = Ar fi mai bine să nu o suni iar

BE BOUND TO - it makes a future prediction of certainty or an obligation (Exprimă prezicerea cu siguranța a unei acțiuni viitoare sau o obligație).

Ex: It's bound to rain tomorrow. = Sigur va ploua mâine.

I am bound to write this paper. = Trebuie să scriu această lucrare.

## POSSIBILITY, PROBABILITY, IMPOSSIBILITY

### POSSIBILITY

Possibility may be expressed with expressions... (Posibilitatea poate fi exprimată prin expresii): it's possible, possibly, perhaps, maybe, it's not very likely

or with modals (sau prin verbe modale):

Present: MAY / MIGHT / CAN + Infinitive

Ex: She may be at home. = E posibil ca ea să fie acasă.

She might be at home now. (stronger doubt) = E posibil ca ea să fie acasă.  
(îndoiala este mai mare)

Can the news of the accident be true? = E posibil ca știrea despre accident să fie adevărată?

Past: MAY / MIGHT / CAN + Perfect Infinitive

Ex.: She may have had an accident. = It is possible that she had an accident. = E posibil ca ea să fi avut un accident.

She might have had an accident = Luckily she didn't have an accident. = S-ar fi putut ca ea să fi avut un accident (Din fericire, nu a avut)

### PROBABILITY

Probability may be expressed with expressions... (Probabilitatea poate fi exprimată prin expresii): I'm sure / certain / positive certainly obviously it's likely it's probable

or with modals (sau prin verbe modale):

Present: MUST + Infinitive

Ex: She must be at home now. (She told me she had a lot of work to do) =  
Trebuie să fie acasă acum. (A spus că are mult de lucru)

Past: MUST + Perfect Infinitive

Ex: She must have had an accident. (I have reason to think so)

= Trebuie să fi avut un accident. (Am motive să cred acest lucru)

### IMPOSSIBILITY

Impossibility may be expressed with expressions... (Imposibilitatea poate fi exprimată prin expresii); it's impossible, it's unlikely

or with modals (sau prin verbe modale):

Present: CANNOT / COULD NOT + Infinitive

Ex: She can't be at home now. (I am positive she is not at home.)

= Nu se poate ca ea să fie acasă acum. (Sunt absolut sigur că nu este acasă)  
She couldn't behave like that (stronger belief)

= Este imposibil Nu se poate ca ea să se poarte așa!. (siguranța rnai putemică)

Past: CANNOT + Perfect Infinitive

Ex: She can't have had an engine trouble. (I checked before she left)  
= Este imposibil sa fi avut o problema de motor. (L-am verificat înainte de plecarea ei)  
She couldn't have been there at 8.00 yesterday. (She was with me.)  
= Este imposibil ca ea să fi fost acolo la ora 8.00 ieri. (Era cu mine)

## MODAL VERBS - EXERCISES

### ELEMENTARY

1. Express ability using the given time expressions, first for the past and then for the future. (Exprimați capacitatea ținând cont de expresiile temporale care cer trecut sau viitor)

Example: You can drive.

You could drive after you got your licence. // You will be able to drive when you are 18.

1. He can play chess.  
..... when he was young.  
.....after you explain him the rules.
2. We can do this exercise.  
..... last week.  
.....next week.
3. She can cook very well.  
.....when I knew her.  
.....with more practice.
4. She can read easily.  
..... before her eye trouble.  
.....with her new glasses.

2. Express permission using the given time expressions, first for the past and then for the future. (Exprimați permisiunea ținând cont de expresiile temporale care cer trecut sau viitor)

Example: You may drive my car, I don't need it today.

You were allowed to drive my car as I didn't need it. // You will be allowed to drive my car tomorrow, as I won't need it.

1. He may play with his friends.  
..... after he had finished his homework.  
.....after he finishes his homework.
2. We may smoke in this room.  
..... as there wasn't any non-smoker. ...  
.....if the old woman leaves.
3. She may wear her cousin's dress.  
..... yesterday.  
.....next week.
4. She may miss the classes if she is ill. ....when she was ill.  
.....when she goes abroad.

3. Express obligation using the given time expressions, first for the past and then for the future. (Exprimați obligația ținând cont de expresiile temporale care cer trecut sau viitor)

Example: I must wash the windows.

I had to wash the windows when he called me. // I will have to wash the windows tomorrow.

1. They must leave the movie before it ends.  
..... earlier yesterday.  
..... earlier tomorrow.
  2. She must go to school every day.  
.....in another town when she was younger.  
..... only in the evenings next year.
  3. I must help my brother with his mathematics lessons  
.....last week.  
.....next week.
4. Complete the sentences by NOT TO HAVE TO to express lack of obligation and by MUST NOT to express interdiction. (Completați spațiile libere folosind NOT TO HAVE TO pentru a exprima lipsa obligației și MUST NOT pentru a exprima interdicția).  
Example: You must not drive the car. You are too young for this.  
You don't have to drive the car if you're tired. I can do it.
1. She .....come again at the hospital. She's recovered now.
  2. They ..... watch TV too long. They have school tomorrow.
  3. I ..... spend all my money this week. What shall I do next week?
  4. My sister ..... go to work. Her husband earns a lot.
  5. You ..... be rich to be my girl. I love you as you are.
  6. You ..... lie to me, son. Otherwise I'll punish you.
5. You are giving advice to a friend. Use SHOULD Or SHOULDN'T (Dați unele sfaturi unui prieten. Folosiți SHOULD sau SHOULDN'T):  
Example: Your friend coughs a lot because of smoking. (stop smoking) You should stop smoking.
1. He has a bad toothache. (go to the dentist) .....
  2. He has been offered a job (accept it) .....
  3. He has a cold. (stay at home) .....
  4. He is going to visit Greece (learn some Greek words).....

## INTERMEDIATE

6. Make sentences to give possible explanations of the following situations. Use MAY, MUST, MIGHT COULD:  
Example: Does John love Gaugain? He might, but he may prefer Van Gogh
1. Where is Mary going this evening? .....
  2. I wonder if Tom will meet us tomorrow. ....
  3. What Is he thinking of? He's absent-minded .....
  4. Why are the children fighting? .....
  5. Is she crying or laughing? .....
7. Say what is likely to happen in the following situations:  
Example: Will Jim accept that job?  
He must accept it; he's always wanted to be that
1. Do you think Diane is home? .....
  2. Are you sure we have enough money?.....
  3. Would I learn easily to ski? .....
  4. Is he going to help us with the translation? .....
8. Express impossibility for the following situations

Example: Bob is rude with his aunt.

You can't talk about my Bob, he is very polite.

1. Sue is afraid of darkness. ....
2. Father doesn't allow me to see Pete .....
3. Robert won't come to our Sunday party .....
4. Pat doesn't answer the phone .....

9. Use WILL or SHALL to fill the spaces in the following sentences:

1. We..... not let the enemy triumph.
2. We've lost our way. What.....we do now?
3. Someone's ringing. That.....be the postman.
4. .... pass me the salt, please?
5. .... I help you with your luggage, young lady?
6. Excuse me, Sir, ..... you be kind to tell me the time?
7. I ..... tell you the truth when I know it, I promise.
8. You ..... not go out the entire week, did I make myself clear?
9. Let's play hide-and-seek, . ..... we?

10. Use SHOULD to express advice and OUGHT TO to express a stronger duty.

1. We ..... (not) let the children out late in the evening.
2. I ..... study, but I'm going to the cinema.
3. You don't look well, I think you ..... see a doctor.
4. Drivers ..... wear safety belts when driving.
5. If you're heading to the Alps, you ..... take some warm clothes with you.
6. They ..... try this cocktail. It's really something, I've tried it myself.

11. Say whether WOULD has been used to express a past habit instead of USED TO (H), past volition (V) or a polite invitation (I):

1. Would you like some more tea? ( )
2. In my youth I would often spent my nights in pubs. ( )
3. I already know Tom wouldn't accept the job. ( )
4. I asked him the truth but he wouldn't tell it to me ( )
5. Would you be so kind to answer a few delicate questions? ( )
6. My parents would most of the time tell me what to do. Now I'm adult and still don't know what's good and what's wrong. ( )
7. As a child I would oftenclimb the trees and jump down. ( )

## ADVANCED

12. Rewrite each sentence so that it contains the words in capitals, and so that the meaning stays the same.

1. This climb is possibly dangerous. COULD  
.....
2. I'm sure that's Marion at the door. WILL  
.....
3. It makes no difference if we call it off. MAY  
.....
4. Don't bother lying to me. NEED.  
.....
5. Although it's summer, the temperature is more like winter. MAY  
.....
6. That's not typical of Helen's behaviour. WOULD  
.....
7. It would be impossible to tell Sally the truth. POSSIBLY

- .....
8. I don't think Harry is likely to resign. WOULD
- .....
9. Do you want me to turn off the oven or not? SHOULD
- .....
10. It is forbidden to make notes on the library books. MUST

13. Complete each sentence with a suitable word or phrase:

1. What about this meat? ..... I roast it or stew it?
2. Thank you for offering, but I ..... possibly accept.
3. Harry studies a lot. He ..... pass the exam.
4. Oh, well, things..... be much worse I suppose.
5. It's no use waiting here. We ..... very well start walking.
6. Jack refuses. He says it's wrong and he ..... do it.
7. Cairo ..... be quite cold in winter.
8. Rule no. 6: No member ..... enter the club without this card.
9. You ..... be right but I still don't agree with you.

14. Complete the comment at the end of each sentence:

1. Pay no attention to what Martin said. He can't have been serious.
2. Fancy accepting the job just like that! You ..... asked me first!
3. The test was no problem at all. It ..... easier in fact.
4. I'm sure Jack didn't mean to ignore you. He ..... noticed you.
5. That was a lucky escape! They ..... killed.
6. Hello, I'm home early. I ..... late at the office after all.
7. The meat is a bit burnt. You ..... cooked it for so long!
8. There were plenty of tickets left for the concert. We ..... them in advance.
9. Sally got home at four o'clock this morning. The party ..... really good!
10. This homework is not as good as usual. I think you .....more time on it.

15. Put one suitable word in each space. Words with n't count as one word:

1. I could have become millionaire a I decided not to.
2. You ..... have been here when Helen told the boss not to be so lazy!'
3. Peter wasn't here then, so he ..... have broken your vase.
4. I ..... have bought the car, but I decided to look at a few others.
5. If you felt lonely, you ..... have given me a ring.
6. Don't take a risk like that again! We ..... have lost because of you.
7. It's been more than a week! You .....have some news by now.
8. We were glad to help. We ..... have just stood by and done nothing.
9. You really..... have gone to so much trouble!
10. I ..... have thought that it was rather difficult.

## QUESTION TAGS - EXERCISES

### ELEMENTARY

1. Add the necessary question-tags to the following statements. (Completați propozițiile următoare, adăugând întrebările disjunctive corespunzătoare):

1	He is early this morning, .....?	11. He speaks English well,
2	We must go now,	12. You can't help him,
3	You can swim well,	13. They are learning English,
4	I was very quick,	14. She isn't too young,
5	It could be done,	15. You were there,
6	You won't be late,	16. He had been to Switzerland,
7	This winter hasn't been cold,	17. I didn't hurt you,
8	You shouldn't smoke,	18. Boys don't like to sing,
9	He has finished,	19. She sang well,
10	They- always work hard,	20. They will visit us,

### INTERMEDIATE AND ADVANCED

2. Complete the following sentences with the necessary question tags. (Completați propozițiile următoare, adăugând întrebările disjunctive corespunzătoare):

Example: 1. It can't have been him, can it?

- |                                       |                                     |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 2. He can never behave properly,      | 15. We ought not to have listened,  |
| 3. Both of them are good,             | 16. They'd rather go out,           |
| 4. They have to be leaving now,       | 17. Let me have a look,             |
| 5. Let's stay at home tonight,        | 18. I'd better go,                  |
| 6. You hardly ever go to the cinema,  | 19. Come and see me,                |
| 7. Come whenever you like,            | 20. You never used to wear a hat,   |
| 8. She rarely watches TV,             | 21. I'm going home by myself,       |
| 9. I am not so fat as you,            | 22. You weren't listening,          |
| 10. They ought not to be here,        | 23. Jack's applied for the job,     |
| 11. He has written a novel,           | 24. You've got a camera,            |
| 12. They used to play chess together, | 25. Listen,                         |
| 13. He has a lot of books,            | 26. They had to go home,            |
| 14. I may come with you,              | 27. There are a lot of people here, |

### PASSIVE VOICE

The subject of an active verb is the performer of the action. (Verbul este la diateza activă atunci când subiectul gramatical savârșește acțiunea.)

Ex: The teacher will explain the lesson. = Profesoara va explica lecție.

With passive verbs, the receiver of the action is more important and becomes the grammatical subject. (Verbul este la diateza pasivă atunci când subiectul gramatical suferă acțiunea săvârșită de altcineva.)

Ex.: The lesson will be explained by the teacher. = Lecția va fi explicată de profesoara.

### FORM

S + TO BE + V (III)

The lesson is explained every day.

Active Voice: The teacher will explain the lesson.

Passive Voice: The lesson will be explained by the teacher.

### NOTES:

- Active voice -> The subject is active (the teacher performs the action, it is the agent; the lesson does nothing, so it is passive) (La diateza activă, subiectul este activ; profesora săvârșește acțiunea, este agentul; lecția nu face nimic, este elementul pasiv)
- Passive voice -> The subject is the passive element from the active sentence. (La diateza pasivă, elementul pasiv devine subiect).
- D The preposition **by** precedes the agent in the passive voice. (În limba engleză, prepoziția “de către” din fața agentului se traduce cu “by”)
- D The passive preserves the tense, the modal, the perfect or the continuous aspect from the active voice. (Verbul de la diateza pasivă are același mod, timp și aspect ca cel de la diateza activă)

Ex: He can do the job The job can be made by him

Tense /verb form	Active voice	Passive voice
Simple present	he writes a letter	a letter is written by him
Present continuous	is writing	is being written
Simple Past	wrote	was written
Past continuous	was writing	was being written
Present Perfect	has written	has been written
Past Perfect	had written	had been written
Future	will write	will be written
Present conditional	would write	would be written
Past conditional	would have written	would have been written
Present infinitive	to write	to be written
Past infinitive	to have written	to have been written
Present participle/gerund	writing	being written
Past participle	having written	having being written

### USE

The passive voice is used when it is more convenient or interesting to stress the thing done than the doer of it. (La diateza pasivă, persoana, lucrul asupra căruia se răsfârșește acțiunea este mai important decât cel care o săvârșește).

- The agent (the doer) is not always mentioned. It can be omitted when it is (Complementul de agent se omite atunci când este):

- unknown (necunoscut):

Ex My wallet has been stolen. = Mi-a fost furat portofelul.

- obvious (evident din context):

Ex: The burglar is now arrested by (the police). = Hoțul este arestat (de poliție).

- generalised (generalizat):

Ex: Plastic money is preferred to the cash nowadays (by people in general)

= În prezent, cardurile bancare sunt preferate banilor (de către oameni în general) impersonal, to avoid naming the agent (impersonal, pentru a se evita numirea agentului):

Ex: It has been decided to start the project earlier.

= S-a hotărât începerea proiectului mai devreme.

- Some verbs can have two objects (to ask, to give, to offer, to pay, to send, to show, to teach, to tell). So it is possible to make two passive sentences. (Verbele care au și complement direct, și complement indirect pot forma două propoziții pasive).

Ex: The manager offered the job to Ann (They offered Ann the job.)

= Directorul i-a oferit o slujbă Anei. )

The job was offered to Ann (by the manager). (1)

= Slujba i-a fost oferită Anei (de către director).

Ann was offered the job (by the manager). (2)

= Anei i-a fost oferită o slujba (de către director). -more usual in English

- Verbs with prepositions can also have passive a voice (Și verbele cu prepoziție pot fi transformate la diateza pasivă).

Ex: :Everyone laughed at her      She was laughed at by everyone.

Toți au râs de ea.      Ea a fost luată în derâdere de toți

The car ran over the tent      The tent was run over by the car.

Mașina a dat peste cort.      Cortul a fost călcat de mașină.

**For advanced students:**

### INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS AFTER PASSIVE VERBS

When - the subject is general (people, they) and

- the verb is a mental one (acknowledge, assume, believe, claim, consider, estimate, expect, feel- grid, know, presume; report, say, think, understand etc.)

there are two possible passive forms

Ex: People say that he is a good painter. = It is said that he is a good painter. (1)

As he is the subject discussed about by people and he is the good painter, he is moved in the front position.

It is said he is a good painter.

He is said to be a good painter. (2)

Thus, we can have:		
Ex People know you lied.		
(1) It is known you lied	or	(2) You are known to have Red.
Ex People expect that the strike will begin today.		
(1) It is expected that the strike will begin today	or	(2) The strike is expected io begin today
Ex. They believe that the killer is now living in Ohio.		

(1) It is believed that the killer is living in Ohio.	or	(2) The killer is believed to be living in Ohio.
---	----	--

**OTHER NOTES:**

- a) Born is a passive verb and is usually past:  
 Ex I was born in Romania. (past)  
 How many babies are bom in this hospital every day?(present)
- b) Sometimes get can be used instead of be in the passive voice (mainly in informal spoken English)  
 Ex Bob got hurt during that trip on the mountain. (=Bob was hurt)
- b) Have something done can also be used to express a passive sentence.  
 Ex: He had his money stolen yesterday. (= His money was stolen yesterday.)  
 John had him leg broken in a foolball game. (= his leg was broken)

But the construction HAVE + OBJECT + V(III) is used to say that we arrange for someone else to do something for us.

Ex I had my hair cut (M-am tuns) means that it was the hairdresser who cut it, not me.

How often do you have your car serviced?

- d) Sometimes to be supposed to means “to be said to’

Ex: Let’s go to see that film. It’s supposed to be good. (=It is said to be good.)

But it usually expresses

- what is planned or arranged

Ex: You we late. You were supposed to be here 5 minutes ago.

- what is not allowed or advisable - at the negative and interrogative form

Ex You are not supposed to park here.

What am I supposed to do? I’ve never been in this situation before.

**PASSIVE VOICE - EXERCISES**

**ELEMENTARY**

**1. Turn the following active sentences into passive voice.** (Transformați următoarele propoziții de la diateza activă la diateza pasivă):

1. John drives his car daily.                    The car ..... by John daily.
2. People don’t use this road very often. This road.....
3. They have changed the date of the meeting.....
4. Bill accused me of stealing the money. ....
5. I painted the room last week.....
6. Workers send their complaints to the union.....
7. Jane is reading this book now.....
8. I could do the whole work in a weekend.....
- 9.They walk the dog every evening.....
10. My grandfather built this house in 1923.....

**2. Complete the following passive voice sentences in the tenses suggested** (Completați propozițiile punând verbele din paranteze la diateza pasivă, la timpul sugerat):

1. This picture .....(always admire). - Present
2. His leg ..... (hurt) in the accident - Past
3. This exercise .....(do) very carefully- Present Continuous

4. The box..... (not open) for the last hundred years. - Present Perfect
5. The Tower of London ..... (formerly use) as a prison. - Past
6. Two of my dinner plates . ..... (break). -Present Perfect
7. The matter ..... (discuss) tomorrow. - Future
8. This door can ..... (easily mend) - Infinitive
9. He saw that the table ..... (push) into the corner - Past Perfect
10. Perfect I ..... (punish) for something I didn't do. - Past

## INTERMEDIATE

**3. Make a passive sentence from the words in brackets.** (Construiți propoziții pasive cu cuvintele din paranteze):

Examples: 1. The church looks very old. (when/it was built?) When was it built?

4. What happens to the cars produced in this factory? (most of them/export)

.....

5. Where is my bike? It's gone! (it/steal!)

.....

6. Margaret is very popular. (she/like/everybody)

.....

7. Mr Kelly can't use his office at the moment (it/redecorate)

.....

8. George didn't have his car yesterday (it/service/at the garage)

.....

9. Where is my bike? It is gone(it/steal).

.....

10. This room looks different. (it/paint/since my last visit?)

.....

**4. Rephrase the sentences preserving the meaning and beginning as shown** (Reformulați propozițiile următoare, păstrând sensul și începând cu cuvintele indicate):

1. They didn't offer Ann the job.

The job .....

Ann .....

2. They don't give Jim a high salary.

A high salary .....

Jim .....

3. They will ask you a lot of questions at the interview.

A lot of questions.....

You.....

4. We will send you your examination results as soon as they are ready.

Your.....

You.....

5. His colleagues will give him a present when he retires.

A present .....

He.....

**5. Rephrase the following sentences so as the meaning stays the same** (Reformulați propozițiile următoare, păstrând sensul și începând cu cuvintele indicate):

1. Mother has sent him a new pullover.

A new pullover .....

2. They had offered me a nice present .....  
I .....
3. People believe that Nick is the best doctor in town.  
Nick is .....
4. It is unlikely that she believed it.  
She .....
5. They don't think that he is such a bad guy.  
He .....
6. The students will ask the visitor some questions.  
The visitor .....
7. The lecturer addressed the audience in English.  
The audience .....
8. Someone broke into my flat while I was away.  
My flat.....
9. They have sent us all the documents in time.  
We .....
10. They have already sent for a doctor.  
A doctor.....

**ADVANCED**

**6. Rewrite each sentence so that it ends with the word underlined;**

Ex.: Another company has taken over our company.

Our company has been taken over.

1. We are dealing with your complaint.  
.....
2. We have not accounted for all the missing passengers.  
.....
3. Someone had tampered with the lock of the front door.  
.....
4. We don't know how they disposed of the body.  
.....
5. I must insist that you keep to the rules.  
.....
6. We are looking into this allegation  
.....
7. We will frown upon any attempts to cheat in the exam.  
.....
8. The child complained that people were picking on him.  
.....
9. Ann was well provided for in her husband's will.  
.....

**7. Rewrite each sentence so that it contains the words in capitals:**

Ex. We believe that the government has prepared a plan. HAVE

The government is believed to have prepared a plan.

1. We are thinking of getting someone to paint the outside of the house.  
..... PAINTED
2. In the end I couldn't find a garage to service my car. GET
3. The police towed away Alan's car GOT
4. Jill's parents are making her study hard MADE
5. Everyone thought that Helen had missed the train. TO



**For advanced students:**

**OTHER WAYS OF EXPRESSING IF:**

8. **unless** means only if not

Ex. . He couldn't have known if he wasn't told by Jane.  
He couldn't have known unless he was told by Jane.

If one situation depends on another, if can be replaced by:

9. **provided**

Ex.: I'll do what you say provided the police are not informed. (numai sa nu)

10. **as long as, so long as**

Ex.: I'll buy you a toy-horse as long as you are a good boy. (atâta timp cât)

11. **only if** (numai dacă)

Ex.: I'll help you only if you want me to.

12. **if only** (măcar de)

Ex. If only I had enough time! (Măcar) de-aș avea destul timp!

If only I hadn't drunk too much, this wouldn't have happened! (Măcar de n-aș fi băut atât de mult (nu s-ar mai fi întâmplat asta.)

**NOTE:** - it is followed by the Subjunctive Mood:

- it adds emphasis to hypothetical situations. With past events it adds a sense of regret

- the second part of the sentence is often left out

**OTHER WAYS OF EXPRESSING CONDITION:**

1. **if it were not for / if it hadn't been for / but for**

Ex.: If it weren't for Jim, this company would be in a mess. = Dacă n-ar fi Jim, această companie ar merge prost.

If it hadn't been for their goalkeeper, that team would have lost. = Dacă n-ar fi fost portarul, această echipă ar fi pierdut,

**but for** - is used in formal language, and must be followed by a noun form

Ex.: But for your help, we would have been in trouble. = If you hadn't helped us, we would have been in trouble.

2. **supposing/suppose** -used in everyday speech

Ex Supposing you won the prize, what would you do?

3. **otherwise** (or if not) - it can go at the beginning or end of the sentence.

Ex.: Thanks for your help. We wouldn't have managed otherwise. (If you hadn't helped us, we wouldn't have managed.)

4. **if so / if not** - these can refer to a sentence understood but not stated Ex: There is a possibility that Jack will be late. If so, I will take his place // If not, I will leave.

3. **if + adjectives** (it is possible to omit the verb to be with some adjectives: necessary, possible, etc.) Ex.: If interested, apply within. If necessary, take a taxi.

**NOTE:** Colloquial uses:

- omission of if, an imperative can be used instead.

Ex.: Sit down, and I'll make us a cup of tea. (If you sit down, I'll make us a cup of tea)

- for past situations, even if technically incorrect, many speakers add a "have", perhaps to balance it in each part of the sentence

Ex.. If I'd have been there, I would have seen her.

## IF IN OTHER TYPES OF SENTENCES

- 1 expressing **doubt and uncertainty** - rule Sequence of Sentences  
Ex.- I wouldn't be surprised if he escaped. I was wondering u he escaped.
- 2- expressing **causality**  
Ex: We went hane early :f it was foggy. If it was snowing, we stayed at home.
3. meaning **although** - with whatever condition (even if / if)  
Ex: Even if it rains, we'll still go far a picnic. (We'll go fix a picnic, although it rains) - rule: Conditional The room was well-furnished, if (although) a little badly decorated
4. in **subject clauses** - using Present Perfect  
Ex.: It you've finished, then we'll go. (Dacă ai terminat, înseamnă că putem pleca.)

## MODALITY IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

### I can, could, may, might-rule: IF Conditional

- Ex.: If you come early, we can discuss the problem together.  
If I had the money, I could help you.  
If you hadn't reminded me, I might hme forgotten.
2. **going to** -can replace will (in the Main Clause) Ex : If you fail, you're going to hurt yourself.  
- means intention (In IF Clause) Ex.: If you're going to make trouble, well call the police, (If you intend to....)
  3. **should** -makes the nossibility of an event seem unlikely  
Ex.: If you should see Ann, could you ask her to call me?
  4. **to be to** (in Subjunctive Mood) - makes an event to seem more hypothetical  
Ex. If I were to ask you to marry me, what would you say?
  5. **happen to** - it emphasises chance possibilities; it is often used with should  
Ex.: If you happen to see Helen, could you ask her to call me? If you should happen to be passing, drop in for a tea.
  6. **will and would** -express politeness and emphasis Ex.: If you will/would wait here, I'll see if...  
Ex: If you will stay out late, no wonder you're tired

## CONDITIONAL CLAUSES - EXERCISES

### ELEMENTARY

**1. Conditional sentences -type 1. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tenses. Do not use future in IF-clauses.** (Puneți verbele din paranteză la timpul potrivit. Nu uitați că după IF nu se pune shall/will):

1. If I see him, I ..... (tell) him to call you.
2. You will be late if you ..... (wait) for me.
3. If he ..... (eat) all that he will be ill.
4. You will miss the beginning of the film if you ..... (not finish) your work soon.
5. She will be very happy if she ..... (hear) about this.
6. If he ..... (not/do) what I say, it won't be easy for him to solve the problem.
7. Mummy, ..... you ..... (tell) me a story if I go to bed early?
8. If i give my dog a bone he ..... (bury) it at once.
9. If you tell her a secret she ..... (not/say) it to anyone.
10. If you work hard you ..... (be) successful.

**2. Conditional sentences - type 2. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tenses. Do not use present conditional in IF-clauses.** (Puneți verbele din paranteză la timpul potrivit. Nu uitați că după IF nu se pune should/would):

1. If I had a pencil I ..... (write) this phone number.
2. I would tell you the answer if I ..... (know) it.
3. If someone gave you a car what ..... you ..... (do)?
4. He would take some days off if he ..... (not/have) so much work to do.
5. I ..... (buy) shares in that company if I had some money.
6. What would you do if you ..... (see) a snake in front of your feet?
7. If he were sent to prison, ..... she ..... (visit) him?
8. More tourists would visit this country if it ..... (have) a better climate.
9. I ..... play chess if I knew the rules.
10. You could get a job easily if you ..... (have) a degree and if you ..... (be) more self-confident.

**3. Conditional sentences -type 3. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tenses. Do not use past conditional in IF-clauses.** (Puneți verbele din paranteză la timpul potrivit. Nu uitați că după IF nu se pune should/would):

1. If I had known that you were in town I ..... (visit) you.
2. If the burglar ..... (sneeze), we wouldn't have known that he was there.
3. She ..... (go) to the party if she hadn't had tickets for the concert.
4. I 'd have baked a cake if I ..... (know) that you were coming.
5. If you ..... (speak) more slowly he would have understood you.
6. If he had asked you to marry him, ..... you ..... .. (accept)?
7. I wouldn't have believed it if I ..... (not/see) it with my own eyes.
8. He ..... (not eat) the pizza if he had known how spicy it was.
9. If they had realized that it was such a long way, they .. ..... (take) a taxi.
10. You would have met my neighbour if you ..... (arrive) ten minutes earlier.

**4. Put the following sentences in the other two types of condition.** (Puneți propozițiile următoare la celelalte două tipuri de conditional):

1. If he saw you, he would speak to you.  
.....  
.....
2. The streets would have been wet if it had rained.  
.....  
.....
3. I'll come and see you if I have time.  
.....  
.....

## INTERMEDIATE

**5. Conditional sentences - mixed types. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tenses.** (Puneți verbele din paranteză la timpul potrivit.):

1. If you pass your examination we ..... (have) a party.
2. What..... (happen) if I opened that door?
3. You would have won the game if you .....(focus) on the ball.
4. If you ..... (read) the instructions you would have known how to use it.
5. If you ..... (wear) a false beard nobody would recognise you.
6. She would have been angry if she ..... (find out) the results of your son's test.

7. If I'd had a car I ..... (not/be) late at the meeting.
8. I'll probably get lost unless he ..... (come) with me.
9. I could repair the roof myself if I .....(have) a longer ladder.
10. If he were at home he ..... (answer) the phone.
11. Unless they turn that radio off I ..... (go) mad.
12. I wouldn't worry if you .....(drive) more carefully
13. Someone .....(sit) on your glaces if you leave them there
14. If she had known he was vegetarian she ..... (not/cook) meat.
15. If you had money to buy one of these rings which one ..... you .....?

**6. Supply IF or UNLESS in the following sentences.** (Completați propozițiile următoare cu IF sau UNLESS):

1. He wouldn't have waited .....you'd been late.
2. He won't speak French ..... he goes to France
3. He would have come ..... you had invited him.
4. .... he started immediately, he would arrive by midday.
5. I shan't write to him ..... he writes to me.
6. He will not learn much ..... he works harder.
7. .... she asks for help, I'll be right there for her.
8. .... my watch hadn't been slow, I wouldn't have been late.
9. He won't hear you ..... you speak louder.
10. He will hear you ..... you speak louder.

**7. Rewrite the sentences choosing the most appropriate conjunction.** (Reformulați propozițiile folosind conjuncția potrivită):

Example: Mr. Davis says he'll talk at the conference if we pay him the transport fees.  
(supposing that          unless          on condition that)

Mr. Davis says he'll talk at the conference on condition that we pay him the transport fees.

1. I won't go to the theatre if it doesn't stop raining.  
(provided          unless          as long as)  
.....
2. If I could get a job, life here would be perfect.  
(what if          even if          if only)  
.....
3. If you had a lot of money, do you think you would give up work?  
(Supposing that          Providing that          As long as)  
.....
4. If the train arrives in time, they'll be here in a few minutes.  
(What if          Assuming that          On condition that)  
.....
5. If he doesn't agree to my request, what shall I do then?  
(Imagine          What if          Provided that)  
.....
6. You can go out tonight if you yet back by midnight  
(as long as          assuming that          supposing that)  
.....
7. If you offered to pay me a thousand pounds, I wouldn't have done it.  
(If only          Provided that          Even if)  
.....

**ADVANCED**

**8. Rephrase the following sentences so as the meaning stays the same:**

1. In your position I should complain to the manager.  
If .....
2. They didn't invite her because they were still angry with her.  
If they .....
3. His car was not repaired, so he had an accident.  
If his car .....
4. I couldn't buy the book because I had no money.  
If I .....
5. Jane lost her bag because she was in a hurry.  
If .....
6. I couldn't enter the house because I had lost my key.  
If .....
7. You are asking these questions because you didn't listen to me.  
If .....
8. But for her, I wouldn't have succeeded.  
If it .....
9. He will answer your letter only when he gets it.  
If .....
10. The weather is so bad that we cannot leave the house.  
If .....
11. You must be 18 years old in order to get a driving license.  
You cannot .....
12. I must get some money to go on that trip.  
Unless .....

**9. Rewrite each sentence so that it contains the word in capitals:**

- |   |        |
|---|--------|
| 1. We won't go away if the weather is bad-              | UNLESS |
| 2. I didn't have the money so I didn't buy a new suit   | WOULD  |
| 3. I regret not studying hard last term.                | ONLY   |
| 4. If they offered you a job, would you accept?         | WERE   |
| 5. If you are in London by any chance, come and see me. | HAPPEN |
| 6. Without you I would have given up years ago.         | BEEN   |
| 7. If you insist on smoking, of course you cough!       | WILL   |
| 8. If you happen to find that book, let me know.        | SHOULD |
| 9. But for her, the team would lose the match.          | WERE   |
| 10. Don't take the job if you don't really want it.     | UNLESS |

## THE NOUN

**KINDS OF NOUNS** - English nouns may be divided in several kinds. (Substantivele din limba engleză pot fi clasificate din mai multe puncte de vedere.)

**Concrete Nouns** Ex.: moon, boy, miner, John

**Abstract Nouns** Ex rest, joy, gold, philosophy

Some words have both an abstract sense and a concrete one. (Unele cuvinte au și sens abstract și sens concret):

Ex.: curiosity - curiozitate (a), obiect rar (c); medicine- medicina (a), medicament (c);

delicacy-delicaete (a), trufanda (c); surgery -chirurgie (a), cabinet medical (c)

justice - dreptate (a), judecător (c);

**Individual Nouns** Ex: child, cat, street      **Collective Nouns** Ex-: army, galaxy, team, public

**Countable Nouns** Ex: children, birds, families      **Uncountable** Ex.: news, neat, football, silver

### THE PLURAL OF NOUNS

#### 1- THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL (FORMAREA PLURALULUI)

##### **A. REGULAR (REGULAT) :**

-S                                      Ex.: books, boys

- ES

a) after -s, -ss, - sh, ch, -x      Ex: dresses, buses, brushes, watches, boxes

b) -f(e) => -ves      Ex.: knife(-ves), leaf(ves), thieves, lives. wives, loaves, canes, halves, shelves, selves, wolves, scarves

Excp.: chiefs, handkerchiefs, griefs, gulfs, dwarfs, roofs, proofs, cliffs, safes,

c) -y (preceded by a Cons) => -ies Ex.: coutry-countries

d) after -o

Ex potatoes, heroes, tomatoes, echoes, volcanoes. Excp: photos, radios, pianos, sopranos, banjos

##### **B- IRREGULAR (NEREGULAT)**

Ex\_: man - men, woman - women, child - children, tooth - teeth, goose - geese, foot - feet, mouse - mice, ox- oxen, louse - lice, person - people

##### **C. FOREIGN PLURALS (PLURALURIPROVENITEDIN ALTE LIMBI)**

- Greek plurals (Din greacă):

- IS => -ES [is]/[ia] Ex.: hypothesis -hypotheses, analysis -analyses, crises-crisis, axis - axes. basis -bases

- Latin plurals (Din latină):

-ON=>-A                      Ex: phenomenon - phenomena, criterion - criteria Ex:

-US=>-I                      radius - radii (raza geometrică), bacillus - bacilli

-UM=>-A                      Ex: addendum - addenda, datum - data

-A=>-AE                      Ex.: larva - larvae

-EX => -ICES                Ex: codex - codices, matrix - matrices

- Italian plurals (Din italiana):

- E, - O => - I      Ex.: gondoliere-gondolieri, bambino-bambini

**NOTE for advanced students:**

- if a square number, the unit is used in the plural Ex.: He is 6 feet tall  
if a subdivision number, the unit is in the singular Ex.: He is 6 foot 3 inches tall
- plural of penny: - pence (value) Ex : It costs a pence  
- pennies (number of coins) Ex: I have 5 pennies in my pocket
- plurals with 2 meanings: Ex.: customs (vama; obiceiuri); damages (stricăciune, despăgubiri)

## **2.CLASSIFICATION OF NOUNS ACCORDING TO THE IDEA OF PLURAL**

(Din punct de vedere al ideii de număr, substantivele în limba engleză se împart în)

### **A- COUNTABLE NOUNS (NUMĂRABILE)**

Ex.: There is a book on the table. // There are several books on the table. **Collective**

#### **Nouns**

Ex: army, galaxy, team, public, committee, family, flock (of sheep), pack (of wolves), congregation, company, regiment, army, bunch (of flowers, of keys), government, crew, herd (of cattle), fleet a navy (of battleships), crowd, audience, staff, race, empire

They have singular form, but may be used either with a verb in the singular (the abstract meaning), or in the plural, when we refer to the various members of the collectivity. (Au form[ de singular, dar pot fi conjugate fie cu un verb la singular, când ne referim la sensul abstract al cuvântului, fie cu un verb la plural, când ne referim la membrii colectivului)

Ex: The family is large. // The family are at home (the members of the family) There are three families in this house.

**Nouns with the same form for the singular and the plural:** (Substantive care au aceeași formă la singular și plural)

Ex: a means, a series, a species, a sheep,  
several means, several series, several species, two sheep.

### **B. UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS (NENUMĂRABILE)**

#### **Characteristics (Caracteristici):**

- they are not preceded by the indefinite article a(n) (nu pot fi precedate de articolul nehotărât)
- they are not used in the plural: therefore, they do not get -s (nu se folosesc la plural, deci nu primesc terminația -s)
- they are used with the verb in the singular (se conjugă cu verbul la singular)
- if we want to count these nouns, we use the phrases/expressions (pentru a număra obiectele denumite de aceste substantive, folosim următoarele expresii):

**a piece of..., an item of..., a bit of..., a loaf of..., a slice of..., a bar of- ., a herd of...**

The nouns which belong to Uncountable Nouns (Din categoria substantivelor nenumărabile fac parte):

- concrete nouns of material (substantive concrete):  
Ex: bread, money, luggage, chalk, milk, wine, silver, fruit, hair, toast.  
two loaves of bread, a piece of chalk
- abstract nouns (substantive abstracte):  
Ex.: information, advice, knowledge, evidence, news. progress, homework, applause, darkness, heat, light, sunshine, football. smoke, courage, fear, imagination  
The news is good.

### **NOUNS USED ONLY IN THE PLURAL (SUBSTANTIVE DEFECTIVE DE SINGULAR)**

- they have the form and / or the meaning of plural (au forma sau înțeles de plural)

- the singular is formed with the expression (pentru a forma singularul, se folosește expresia):  
**a pair of**

- they agree with the verb in the plural (se conjugal cu verbul la plural):

- - S Ex: spectacles, scissors, tongs, trousers, shorts, measles, billiards, cards, astronautics, economics, the Alps, the Indies, savings, shotcomigs, goods, commons The scissors are on the table.
- nouns of multitude Ex.: people, police, cattte, the rich/ poor/ wounded (oarneni) (politiști) (vite) The rich are often selfish.

### **NOUNS USED ONLY IN THE SINGULAR (SUBSTANTIVE DEFECTIVE DE PLURAL)**

Ex.: happiness, moon, sugar, sheep

### **3. THE PLURAL OF COMPOUND NOUNS (PLURALUL SUBSTANTIVELOR COMPUSE)**

A. two nouns => the main noun gets the mark of plural (La substantivele compuse din două substantive, marca de plural va fi primită de substantivul principal)

Ex: classrooms, pencil-boxes, mothers-in-law, classmates, tax-collectors

B. noun + man/woman => men/women (Substantivele care se termină cu man/woman, fac pluralul cu men/women) Ex: policewomen, postmen

C. man / woman + noun => both at plural (Substantivele compuse, care încep cu man/woman, primesc plural la ambele substantive) Ex: women-servants

D. other grammatical categories + noun => plural at noun (Substantivele compuse din alte părți de vorbire și un substantiv primesc marca de plural la substantiv)

Ex: highways, by-passers, lookers-on

E. no nouns => -s at the end of the compound noun (Substantivele compuse cu alte părți de vorbire, fără substantive, primesc marca de plural la sfârșit)

EX: merry-go-rounds, forget-me-nots, new-borns

### **THE GENITIVE CASE**

#### **1. THE SYNTHETIC GENITIVE (The Saxon Genitive) (Genitivul sintetic sau saxon)**

**FORM: owner + 'S + owned object**

Ex.: the boy's book, the children's book, Mary's end Tam's rooms, Mary and Tom's parents

**NOTE:** After a noun ending in S, the genitive will be only ' . (După un substantiv care se termină cu s, se pune doar apostroful). Ex.: Charles' car, the boys' books

**The double genitive (Genitivul dublu):** Ex.: a friend of Mary's

Types of nouns used with the Synthetic Genitive (Genitivul sintetic se folosește când posesorul poate fi):

- nouns denoting beings, persons (substantive care denumesc ființe, persoane):  
Ex.: Shaw's plays, the boy's book
- nouns denoting time, distance (substantive care denumesc timpul sau distanța):  
Ex: a days trip, five years' imprisonment, a mile's walk
- nouns denoting value, weight (substantive care denumesc valoarea, greutatea):  
Ex: a pond's weight of sugar
- names of countries; (nume de țan): Ex: Romania's forests
- with sake (cu expresia de drag u :  
Ex : for God's sake, for mercy's sake, for peace sake  
accepted phrases (în anumite expresii):

Ex.: at one's fingers tips, out of harm's way, my heart's desire,  
the needle's eye, at your wit's end

**2. THE ANALYTIC GENITIVE (The Prepositional Genitive) (Genitivul analitic sau prepozițional FORM: owned object + OF + owner**

Ex: the book of the library, the windows of the room

Types of nouns used with the Analytic Genitive (Genitivul analitic se folosește):

- nouns denoting things ( cu posesorul exprimat prin substantive care denumesc obiecte)

Ex: the cover of the book

- when the noun in genitive has a determinant (când substantivul care exprimă posesorul are determinant)

Ex.: the beauty of the girl in red

- for emphasis, in titles of books (pentru a accentua, în titlurile cărților)

Ex: the boy's adventures / The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn

Shakespeare's plays / The Complete Works of W. Shakespeare

**3. THE IMPLICIT GENITIVE (genitivul implicit)**

**FORM: owner +owned object**

Ex.. the 20<sup>th</sup> century literature, a 10 percent wage increase, a horse race

**THE GENDER**

**I. LEXICAL**

Ex.:man-woman,boy-girl, manservant-maidservant,cat-tomcat,bear-she bear

**2. GRAMMATICAL**

Ex.: he-she Excp.: baby, infant, child =it  
car, ship, country (anything that has a seem to have a personality) = he / she

- 3. PERSONIFICATIONS** masculine: anger, love, river, thunder feminine: affection, devotion, jealousy, vice

**THE NOUN - EXERCISES**

**ELEMENTARY**

- 1. Give the plural of the following (Puneți următoarele cuvinte la plural:**

house	mouse	potato	piano	baby	valley
.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
knife	thief	roof	cliff	woman	tooth
.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
child	box	ox	phenomenon	crisis	museum
.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....

- 2. Give the singular of the following (Puneți următoarele cuvinte la singular):**

heroes	kisses	flies	donkeys	loaves	feet
.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
skies	skis	taxes	taxis	doves	halves
.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
criteria	allies	alleys	wives	data	axes
.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....

- 3. Find in the dictionary the full forms of the following (Găsiți în dicționar forma completă a următoarelor prescurtări):**

ad	.....	phone	.....
math	.....	bike	.....
lab	.....	BBC	.....

gym	.....	FBI	.....
movie	.....	TV	.....
zoo	.....	UNESCO	.....
champ	.....	VIP	.....
vet	.....	Hi-Fi	.....

4. Give the feminine for the following nouns (Care este femininul următoarelor substantive?):

son	Lord	nephew	uncle	father	brother
.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
cock	boy	husband	man	king	steward
.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....

5. Build the (synthetic or analytic) genitive of the following nouns (construiți genitivul analitic sau sintetic cu următoarele substantive):

- Mary is.....(David/sister)
- The ..... have numbers (the pages/the book)
- What is ,.....(Your brother/hobby)
- This is ..... (my sister/hat)
- I like ..... (the colours/this painting)
- This is..... (my brother and sister/room)
- Where are ..... ? (the girls/coats)
- ..... are very interesting (Dickens/novels)
- We will decorate all ..... (the rooms/our house)

### INTERMEDIATE

6. Give a collective noun for each of the following (Completați cu substantive colective):

- A large number of soldiers .....
- People listening to music .....
- A number of cows .....
- A number of sheep .....
- A number of flowers .....
- A number of battleships .....
- Eleven men playing football as a body .....
- Nations under one ruler .....
- Blood related people .....

7. Give the plural of the following compound nouns (Formați pluralul următoarelor substantive compuse):

schoolboy	masterpiece	brother-in-law	milkman
woman dentist	postman	Blackboard	passer-by
bedroom	car race	looker-on	merry-go-round
forget-me-not	footstep	Fireman	son-in-law

8. Complete the following sentences with the right phrase (Completați propozițiile cu cuvintele următoare):

**piece, bit, item, article, pair, herd, sheet, bar, loaf, slice, bottle, handful**

- I need a white ..... of paper.
- She bought two ..... of chocolate yesterday.
- I want a ..... of white bread and two ..... of brown bread.
- Give me a ..... of chalk, will you?

5. What a ..... of work is man!
6. Will you cut two ..... of meat for me? Put on the plate a ..... of rice, too.
7. This is an important ..... of evidence.
8. I need a new ..... of trousers. And I think I'll buy some other ..... to wear, too.
9. She sat on the beach and took a ..... of sand.
10. This an interesting ..... of news.
11. This ..... of information may be useful some times.
12. With a little ..... of luck we will succeed.
13. This is a beautiful ..... of furniture.
14. They bought twenty ..... of cattle at the fair.
- 15 I forgot to buy a ..... of wine for my brother's birthday.

## ADVANCED

### 9. Which of the underlined parts of these sentences is right?

Example: Sue was very helpful. She gave me some good advice/advises.

1. Margaret has got very long black hair/hairs.
2. We had a very good weather/very good weather when we were on holiday.
3. Sorry I'm late. I had trouble/troubles with the car this morning.
4. I want something to read. I'm going to buy a/some paper.
5. I want to write some letters. I need a/some writing paper.
6. It's very difficult to find a work /iob at the moment.
7. Bad news don't/doesn't make people happy.
8. Our travel/journey from London to Istanbul by train was very interesting.
9. The flat is empty. We haven't got any furnitures/furniture yet.
10. I had to buy a/some bread because I wanted to make some sandwiches

### 10. Complete the sentences with the following words. Sometimes you need a or some. means people scissors series species spectacles shorts

Example: She can't see very well. She needs spectacles.

This plant is a very rare species.

1. Footballers don't wear trousers when they play. They wear .....
2. The bicycle is ..... of transport.
3. The bicycle and the car are ..... of transport.
4. I want to cut this piece of material. I need .....
5. Ann is going to write ..... of articles for her local newspaper.
6. There are a lot of American television ..... on British television.
7. In the forest we saw at least 15 different ..... of bird.
8. We need at least four ..... to play this game.

### 11. Choose the correct form of the verb. Then translate the sentence into Romanian:

Example: Gymnastics is/are my favourite sport.

Gimnastica este sportul meu preferat.

1. The trousers you bought for me doesn't/don't fit me.  
.....
2. Physics was/were my best subject at school.  
.....
3. Fortunately the news wasn't/weren't as bad as we had expected.

- .....
4. The police wants/want to interview Fred about the robbery.
- .....
5. Three days isn't/aren't long enough for a good holiday.
- .....
6. Where does/do your family live?
- .....
7. England has/have lost all their football matches this season. . . . .
- .....
8. Can I borrow your scissors? Mine isn't/aren't sharp enough.
- .....
9. I'm going to take a taxi. Six miles is/are too far for me to walk.
- .....
10. His knowledge of English isn't/aren't very good.
- .....
11. The United States supports/support Afghanistan.
- .....
12. Darts is/are played by people of all ages.
- .....
13. The stairs leads/lead to the cellar.
- .....
14. My family has/have to stay at home this week-end.
- .....
15. The scales is/are in the kitchen.
- .....

## THE ARTICLE

### 1. THE DEFINITE ARTICLE: THE

The is pronounced differently if it is followed by a vowel or a consonant. (Pronunția articolului hotărât se schimbă în funcție de sunetul cu care începe substantivul determinat)

[ð] + consonant or semi-vowel ([w], [j]) Ex.: the dog, the weather, the youth

[ð i:] + vowel Ex: the orange, the elephant

### II. THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE: A (+ consonant) Ex: a dog, a window, a year

AN (+ vowel) Ex: an orange, an elephant

### III. ZERO ARTICLE: 0

The absence of an article in front of a noun is often considered to be the presence of the zero article. (Uneori anumite substantive par neînsoțite de articol. În astfel de cazuri, absența articolului echivalează ca funcție cu prezența articolului zero).

A		Countable		<b>the</b>	<b>the</b> rose, <b>the</b> boy, <b>the</b> tree
R					
T.	Sg	Uncountable	abstract	<b>Ø</b>	I like <b>tea</b> and beer
H			identified	<b>the</b>	<b>The</b> tea that I drank was bad.
O					
T.		Countable	abstract	<b>Ø</b>	<b>Roses</b> are lovely flowers.
	Pl				

			identified	<b>the</b>	<b>The</b> roses you bought are lovely.
A R	Sg	Countable		<b>a, an</b>	<b>a</b> rose, <b>a</b> boy, <b>an</b> animal
T. N		Uncountabl		Ø	I want <b>bread, butter</b> and <b>jam</b> .
E H.	Pl	Countable		Ø	There are <b>roses</b> in my garden.

## THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

The definite article refers to already mentioned items, and so its use depends on context. (Articolul hotărât se referă la lucruri deja menționate, folosirea sa depinzând de context).

Ex: Look at the car over there!

The legs a the table are broken.

It is used before (Se folosește înaintea unor):

- **concrete nouns**; before abstract nouns only if they are already known or previously mentioned (substantive concrete; înaintea celor abstracte numai dacă sunt cunoscute în context sau menționate anterior)

Ex: I want to buy the bed I told you about.

They looked at the bed: it was empty.

But: to lie in bed; to go to bed

Ex.: Breakfast is my favourite meal. // She put the breakfast on the table.

Ex.: Life is very hard for some people. // The life we live is hard.

- **proper nouns** (nume proprii)

- **in the plural** (la plural) Ex : the Johnsons, the Social Democrats, the Rolling stones

- **in the singular** if they become common nouns (la singular dacă devin substantive comune)

Ex.: Did you see the Gaugain at the Tate?

if they are determined by other noun (dacă sunt determinate de alt subst.)

Ex.: the Bucharest of prewar days.

- names of **cardinal points** (substantive care denumesc puncte cardinale)

Ex.: To the north, the house overlooks the sea.

Exception: when used as adverbs. (Excepție, când acestea sunt exprimate prin adverbe)

Ex.: The wind blows east.

- **ordinal numerals** (numerate ordinale)

Ex.: the first, the second, the fifteenth

- **superlatives** (superfative)

Ex.: the best friend, the most wonderful day of my life

- **newspaper titles** (nume de ziare)

Ex.: The Independent, The Sunday Times

- **musical instruments** (nume de instrumente muzicale)

Ex.: to play the piano/the guitar

- **in expressions like**

out of the blue	out of the question
(in expresii precum)	in the middle of

**NOTE** (Observați expresiile):

	in the morning	<b>BUT</b> at dawn
	in the afternoon	at dusk
	in the evening	at night

## THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE

It is used before (Se folosește înaintea unor):

- nouns that denote jobs (substantive ce denumesc meserii)  
Ex: She became a teacher.  
Excp: when the job is abstract or unique (Excepție, când meseria este abstractă sau este vorba de o funcție importantă)  
Ex.: He was elected President / head-master
  - nouns that denote **nationalities**  
(substantive ce denumesc naționalități)  
But for groups as a whole (pentru grupuri)  
Ex: The French have more pets than the English.
  - an **aposition** (apozitii)  
Ex: I met Jane, a pop singer.
  - **numerals**: hundred, thousand, million, dozen, score (numerate: sută, mie, milion, duzină, pol)  
Ex: I bought a dozen of handkerchiefs.
  - some **time** and **measure** expressions, instead of the formal **per** (expresii legate de timp sau măsurare, în locul prepoziției per)  
Ex: a pound and a half of cheese, \$ 5 a kilo; three times a day, 50 km an hour
  - In **expressions like**:  
(în expresii precum)
- |                       |                  |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| such a beautiful work | at a distance    |
| what a mess           | with a view to   |
| as a reward           | to be in a hurry |

## ZERO ARTICLE

It is used before (Se folosește înaintea unor):

- **uncountable nouns** (substantive nenumarabile)  
Ex: Gold is a precious metal. knowledge is power.
  - **proper names** (substantive proprii)  
Ex: George, Claudia Smith
  - **languages** (substantive ce denumesc o limbă)  
Ex: Do you speak English?  
BUT: What's the English for 'Bonsoir!'?
  - **school subjects** (subst. ce denumesc materii școlare)  
Ex: we study chemistry today.
  - some **time** sequences în unele adverbe de timp)  
Ex: a, Monday. in January, every summer, at noon.  
Excp.: the summer of 1989
  - a noun in **an exclamation** (unui subst. într-o exclamație)  
Ex: Boy! Man!
  - **in expressions like**:  
(în expresii precum)
- |            |                   |
|------------|-------------------|
| for good   | from head to foot |
| in wear    | from top to toe   |
| at random  | at first sight    |
| by mistake | for fear of       |

For advanced students:

### GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

<b>use THE with</b>	<b>use ZERO ARTICLE with</b>
Names of countries at a plural form or determined by adjectives Ex: the United States, the Netherlands the United Kingdom or Great Britain and Northern Ireland	names of countries at singular form . Ex: Romania, Canada
Names of rivers, oceans, seas, deserts, chains of mountains, unique features, compass points/areas Ex: the Thames, the Mississippi, the Atlantic, the Baltic, the Sahara, the Gobi, the Alps, the Channel, the Middle East	peaks, lakes, continents don't get the article; neither do compound nouns designing the mentioned geographical items Ex.: Mount Everest, Lake Mont-Ana, Europe, Cape Canaveral, Pat Said; Stratford-on-Avon
Names of streets, parks, ships, museums Ex: the Tower, the Tate, the 'Titanic' the British Museum -an adjective determines the noun	when there are 2 nouns Ex: Park Lane, Trafalgar Square
Places with of Ex: The University of Leeds, The Isle of Man	places with another name as first part Ex.: Is University, Can Island

## THE ARTICLE - EXERCISES

### ELEMENTARY

1. What is the correct pronunciation of the in the following examples: a) [ðð] or b) [ði]? (Care este pronunția corectă a articolului hotărât în următoarele exemple: a) [ðð] sau b) [ði]

the baloon	a)	the union	_____
the answer	b)	the Indian	_____
the blue sky	_____	the hospital	_____
the yellow ribbon	_____	the apple	_____
the umbrella	_____	the European	_____
the shelf	_____	the university	_____

2. Complete with a or an. (Completați cu articolul nehotărât a/an):

a wild dog	_____	book
an old man	_____	unique person
_____ hair	_____	wonderful evening
_____ honest man	_____	open box

\_\_\_\_\_ ice cream                      \_\_\_\_\_ elegant woman  
 \_\_\_\_\_ ear                              \_\_\_\_\_ year

**3. What do you call the people of these countries or regions? (Care este naționalitatea popoarelor care locuiesc în următoarele țări sau regiuni?):**

Russia	Britain	Ireland	Wales	Scotland	England
the Russians	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
Spain	France	Japan	Germany	China	Switzerland
.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
The U.S.	Portugal	Brasil	Sweden	Finland	The Netherlands
.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....

**INTERMEDIATE**

**4. Write a/an before the nouns which are being used as countable nouns (Puneți articolul hotărât a/an în fața substantivelor numărabile):**

Examples: Beauty is subjective.

She is a real beauty.

1. I am fortunate to have had ..... very good education.  
 .....Education does not just take place at school.
2. My eyes are sometimes sensitive to ..... light.  
 Is there ..... light in here?
3. You've been ... .. great help to me.  
 I'm sorry to ask you, but I desperately need ..... help.
4. I don't usually drink ..... coffee.  
 I'll have two teas and .....coffee, please.
5. He has.. ..... great love of music.  
 Sometimes ..... love may be very painful.
6. You'll get better at the job as you gain ..... experience.  
 I'm so glad I did it: it was ..... wonderful experience.
7. The house is built of ..... stone.  
 This is ..... beautiful stone.
8. I usually eat ..... fruit for breakfast.  
 That's ..... very unusual fruit. What is it?
9. I think that's ..... really ugly painting.  
 ..... Painting is a very relaxing activity.

**5. Choose the correct form, with or without the (Alegeți forma corectă: cu sau fără articolul hotărât):**

1. I'm afraid of dogs/the-dogs.
2. Can you pass me salt/the salt, please?
3. Apples/The apples are good for you.
4. Look at apples/the apples in that tree! They're very large.
5. In our neighbourhood coffee/the coffee is more expensive than tea/the tea.
6. Did you read the book about life/the life of Ghandi?
7. Life/the life would he very difficult without electricity/the electricity.
8. All books/All the books on the top shelf belong to me.
9. Do you know people/the people who live next door/the next door?
10. Second World War/The Second World War ended in 1945.

11. Ken Roberts is in prison/the prison for robbery.
12. Some children hate school/the school.
13. What time do your children finish school/the school?
14. After leaving school/the school, Nora worked as a cleaner in hospital/the hospital.
15. When you go to hospital/the hospital to see George, let me know.
16. We stopped in that village to visit church/the church.
17. My aunt goes to church/the church every Sunday.
18. After she finished work/the work she was assigned, Ann went home.
19. What time do you start work/the work?
20. I like to read in bed/the bed before going to sleep.

**6. Complete the following sentences with the indefinite article a/an or the definite article the** (Completați spațiile libere cu articolul nehotărât an sau cu articolul hotărât the):

Examples: There was a man and a woman in the first room. The man was Romanian, but the woman looked foreign.

1. This morning I bought ..... newspaper and ..... magazine. I put ..... newspaper in my bag, but I don't know where ..... magazine is.
2. My parents have ..... cat and ..... dog. .... dog never bites ..... cat but ..... cat often scratches ..... dog.
3. We live in ....., old house in ..... middle of that village. There is ..... beautiful garden behind ..... house.
4. I'm looking for ..... job. I accept anything.
5. Did Ann get ..... job she applied for?
6. Would you like ..... cup of tea?
7. Could you close ..... door, please?
8. We went out for ..... meal last night. .... restaurant we went to was very good.
9. Did ....., police find ..... person who stole your bike?
10. Have you got ..... car. No, I use ..... car of ..... company I work for.

## ADVANCED

**7. Complete the following sentences with the indefinite article a/an, the definite article the or the zero article:**

Examples: We went to the zoo yesterday.

Do you want to watch television this evening? Last night we went out for a meal in a restaurant.

1. .... moon goes round..... earth every 27 days.
2. Did you see the film on ..... television or at ..... cinema?
3. After ..... lunch we went for ..... walk by ..... sea.
4. I'm not very hungry. I had ..... big breakfast before I came to ..... work.
5. Tim lives in ..... small village in ..... country.
6. I never listen to ..... radio. In fact, I haven't got ..... radio.
7. It was a long voyage. We were at ..... sea for four weeks.
8. I prefer swimming in ..... sea to swimming in pools.
9. Can you turn ..... television down, please? It's a bit loud.
10. I've invited Tom to ..... dinner next Wednesday.

**8. Choose the most suitable article underlined:**

1. Helen doesn't like the/ - cream cakes sold in a/the local bakery.

2. The/ - basketball is fast becoming a/the popular sport worldwide.
3. We could see that the/ - Alps were covered in the! - snow.
4. It's a/ - long time since I met a/ - lovely person like you!
5. Diana has a/ - degree in the/ - engineering from the/ - University of London.
6. At the/ - present moment, the/ - man seems to have the/an uncertain future.
7. The/ - problem for the/ - today's students is how to survive financially.
8. The/ - French enjoy spending holidays in the/ - countryside.
9. Please do not turn on a/the water-heater in a\_/the bathroom.
10. Sue bought a/the Picasso I was telling you about the/ - last week.

### 9. Correct the sentences if necessary:

Examples: Everest was first climbed in 1953.      RIGHT

Milan is in north of Italy.      WRONG - in the north of Italy

1. Last year we visited Canada and United States. ....
2. Africa is much larger than Europe. ....
3. South of England is warmer than north. ....
4. WP went to Spain and swam in Mediterranean. ....
5. Tom has visited most countries in western Europe.....
- 6., When we were in London, we visited National Galery.....
7. Mr. Jenkins reads The Times every day. ....
8. The British Prime Minister lives in the Downing Street.....
9. Tate Gallery is an art museum in London. ....
10. Nile is longest river in Africa. ....
11. Have you seen the film at the Scala? ....
12. United Kingdom consists of Great Britain and Northern Ireland.....

## THE ADJECTIVE

### KINDS

a) **Simple** (Simple):                      easy, good, short

b) **Derived** (Derivate):

with suffixes (cu sufixe): - FUL: beautiful , painful, useful. hopeful

with prefixes (cu prefixe) - LESS: pan-; useless, hopeless, harmless

- ED: black-haired, blue-eyed, short-sighted unhappy, indirect, illegal, etc

c) **Compound** (Compuse):

Noun + Adjective:                      He is homesick, a snow-white shirt

Adj/Adv + -ing:                          a sad-looking lady, a well-meaning suggestion

Noun + -ing:                              a heart-breaking song

Adv + -ed:                                  a well-dressed girl, a well-done job, an open-minded person

Noun/Pron/Numeral + -ed:            home-made jam, self-made man, a six-sided object

more words:                                a down-to-earth person, the day-to-day            work

### AGREEMENT

Adjectives in English have only one form, which is used with singular and plural, masculine and feminine nouns. În limba engleză adjectivele au o singură formă, ele neacordându-se în gen și număr cu substantivul determinat):

Ex: a clever boy = un băiat deștept      clever boys = băieți deștepți  
a clever girl = o fată deșteaptă      clever girls = fete deștepte

## DEGREES OF COMPARISON

### GRADELE DE COMPARATIE

	SHORT ADJECTIVES	LONG ADJECTIVES
POSITIVE	tall	beautiful
COMPARATIVE	ADJ -ER + THAN	MORE + ADJ + THAN
- superiority	taller than	more beautiful than
- equality	AS -+ ADJ + AS	
	as tall as	as beautiful as
- inferiority	LESS + ADJ + THAN	
	less tall than	less beautiful than
SUPERLATIVE		
- absolute	very, most, quite, too, rather, enough, almost, nearly, hardly	
	very tall	very beautiful
-relative	THE + ADJ -EST + OF	THE + MOST + ADJ + OF
-of superiority	the tallest	the most beautiful
	THE + LEAST + ADJ + IN	

### NOTES (OBSERVAȚII):

- Short adjectives (în categoria adjectivelor scurte intră):  
1 syllable (adjectivele formate dintr-o silabă): Ex: **hot, long, nice**  
2 syllables, ending in (adjectivele formate din 2 silabe, terminate în):  
-Y, -ER, -OW, -LE Ex **happy, clever, narrow, simple**
- Spelling rules (Reguli de scriere):  
-Y=> ier easy - easier - the easiest  
-e=> er large - larger - the largest  
- adj of 1 syllable (1 vowel) double the final consonant: hot-hotter-the hottest, thin-thinner-the thinnest

## IRREGULAR COMPARISON

### Adjective cu grade de comparatie neregulate:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
Good	better	the best
Bad/ill	worse	the worst
much / many	more	the most
Little	less	the least
Late	later (temporal) latter the second in a row	the latest
Far	farther (local) further (temporal) adds information)	the farthest (local)  the furthest (temporal)

Near	nearer (local) next in a row)	the nearest
Old	older elder (in a family)	the oldest the eldest

### SPECIAL CONSTRUCTIONS

- **THE + COMPARATIVE ..... THE + COMPARATIVE** (Cu cât.... cu atât... )  
Ex.: The more people we gather, the merrier we'll be. = Cu cât adunăm mai mulți oameni, cu atât mai bucurăși vom fi.
- **COMPARATIVE + AND + COMPARATIVE** (Din ce în ce mat... )  
Ex.: In winter days are shorter and shorter. = Iarna, zilele sunt din ce în ce mai scurte.  
She is more and more beautiful but less and less clever.  
= Ea este din ce în ce mai frumoasă dar din ce în ce mai puțin deșteaptă.
- **ALL THE + COMPARATIVE + AS (SINCE, BECAUSE)** (Cu cât mai ... cu atât... )  
Ex. It was all the easier as we had done it before. = Era cu atât mai ușor cu cât mai făcusem acest lucru înainte.  
It was all the more difficult because it was unexpected. = Era cu atât mai greu cu cât nu ne așteptam la aceasta.  
It was all the less easy to understand since it was a completely new subject.  
= Era cu atât mai puțin ușor de înțeles din moment ce era un subiect cu totul nou
- **THE + COMPARATIVE= SUPERLATIVE OUT OF TWO** (Cea/cel mai .... din două/doi)  
Ex.: Mary is the prettier of the two sisters. = Mary este cea mai drăguță dintre cele două surori.

### POSITION

Ordinea adjectivelor în propoziție:

- usually before the noun (de obicei, înaintea substantivului)

Ex. a good book = o carte bună

**NOTE:** - when there are two or more adjectives before a noun, the order is the following (Când avem 2 sau mai multe adjective înaintea unui substantiv, ordinea este următoarea):

1. Article	2. Size	3. Shape	4. Age	5. Colour	6. Participle	7. National	8. Materia	9. Noun
a	Large		old					tree
a					freezing	English		day
a				black			leather	jacket
a				blue	knitted			hat

- when there are two or more adjectives of colour, the last two are separated by and (Când avem două sau mai multe adjective care exprimă culoarea, ultimele două sunt legate prin conjuncția and):

Ex:- a red, white and blue flag = un steag roșu, alb și albastru

### NOTE for advanced students:

- adjectives of quality (afraid, alike, alone, ashamed, asleep, awake, likely, etc) are placed after the

verbs: Ex.: That guy is always alone // He is a lonely guy.

- Adjectives may be separated from the subject by verbs like: be, become, get, seem, appear, look, feel, sound, smell, taste, turn.

Ex: The house looked large and inconvenient. The weather got colder everyday.

- adjectives that express size, duration, age (broad, deep, high, long, old, tall, wide) are placed after the noun.

Ex: Her brother is 31 years old, the house is 3 feet high  
 The dentist asked the patient to open his mouth open.

## THE ADJECTIVE - EXERCISES

### ELEMENTARY

**1. Write the comparatives and superlatives of the following adjectives** (Formați comparativul și superlativul următoarelor adjective):

clean	Hot	easy	polite	good
cleaner than				.....
less clean	.....	.....	.....	.....
as clean as	.....	.....	.....	.....
the cleanest	.....	.....	.....	.....
the least	.....	.....	.....	.....
very clean	.....	.....	.....	.....

**2. Translate the following expressions** (Traduceți următoarele expresii):

1. mai ușor ca .....
2. tot așa de scump ca .....
3. cel mai mic .....
4. mai puțin drăguț ca .....
5. nu atât de bătrân ca .....
6. cel mai rău .....
7. mai leneș decât .....
8. cel mai interesant .....
9. mai puțin politicos .....
10. cel mai bogat .....
11. mai dificil ca .....

**3. Choose the right adjective** (Alegeți adjectivul corect):

1. I was disappointing/disappointed with the film.
2. It's sometimes embarrassing/embarrassed when you have to ask people for money.
3. Are you interesting/interested in football?
4. I enjoyed the match a lot. It was quite exciting/excited.
5. It was a really terrifying/terrified experience. Afterwards everybody was very shocking/shocked.
6. I had never expected to be offered the job. I was really amazing/amazed when I was offered it.
7. The kitchen hadn't been cleaned for ages. It was really disgusting/ disgusted.
8. Do you easily get embarrassing/embarrassed?

### INTERMEDIATE

**4. Complete the sentences using the comparative or the superlative form of the adjective in brackets** (Completați propozițiile punând adjectivele din paranteze la forma comparativă sau superlativă):

1. They chose this hotel because it was .....(good) in the town and ..... (cheap) than they expected.
2. Mona Lisa is .....(famous) painting in my opinion.
3. I don't know who is ..... (old) in their family but I'm sure that Tom is ..... (young) than his sister.

4. He is considered ..... (popular) singer in his country. Definitely, he is ..... (popular) by far than the other singers.
5. Travelling by car is ..... (comfortable) than by bus but if you are in a hurry, go by plane. It's the ..... (fast).
6. He is ..... (lazy) student in the class.
7. She is looking for a ..... (big) flat than the one she has now.
8. Jane is ..... (good) cook I know.
9. My work may be bad, but yours is ..... (bad).
10. The weather in Florida is ..... (hot) than the weather in Montana.

5. **Fill in the blanks with the intensifiers: much, far, a lot, a good deal, for the comparative, and : by far, possible, imaginable, for the superlative.**

1. In the end, he will pay a .. ..... higher price for it.
2. Travelling is ..... more interesting than watching TV
3. This is ..-..... the most pressing problem we face.
4. You have found the best ..... solutions to my troubles.
5. We had the greatest difficulty ..... getting here in time.
6. Our old secretary is ..... more experienced than the new one.
7. I think your interviews are ..... better than hers.

6. **Change the following into compound and derived adjectives (Formați adjective compuse și derivate din următoarele cuvinte):**

- Example: a girl with blue eyes = a blue-eyed girl  
 a play having success = a successful play
1. a carpet made by hand = .....
  2. a student who works hard = .....
  3. a man who looks good = .....
  4. a man with a simple mind = .....
  5. conditions which can be accepted= .....
  6. a story which breaks the heart= .....
  7. a driver who does not take care = .....
  - B. a day with much wind = .....
  9. a man who has courage - .....
  10. a suit which is cut well = .....
  11. a road with one way = .....

**ADVANCED**

7. **Choose the adjective which best completes each sentence:**

**alone            lonely            solitary**

Mr. Morris is a ..... old man.

She is .....in the house.

The ..... traveller stopped by the the well to drink some water.

**afraid                            frightened**

She gave the stranger a ..... look.

He was ..... of what you might say.

**alive                            living live**

He was very lucky to be still ..... after that accident. Frogs feed chiefly on ..... insects.

No ..... man can do that. asleep sleeping

**asleep                            sleep**

Tell me the story of the ..... Beauty.

He was asleep when we got home.

**8. Choose the correct form of the following adjectives:**

1. From these two dresses the cheaper is the best/the better.
2. Since she retired, less and less/fewer and fewer friends have visited her.
3. Mike and Bob are students. The former studies medicine, the second/the latter studies physics.
4. Her older/elder sister did not come to the party.
5. The doctor asked the nearest/the next person to come in.
6. Have you read the latest/the last novel of Dickens?
7. Which is the farthest/the furthest planet?
8. For further/farther information, please call us at the number printed below.
9. She has much/many money to spend on clothes.

**9. Put the adjectives in brackets in the correct position:**

Examples: a/table/beautiful Mroodenround a beautiful round wooden table

1. a(n)/ring/gold/unusual
2. a(n)/nice/lady/old
3. a/man/young/good looking
4. a(n)/house/modern/attractive
5. gloves/leather/black
6. a(n)/film/old/American
7. a/red/nose/large
8. a/day/lovely/sunny
9. nice/a/bath/hot
10. an/dress/ugly/orange
11. a(n)/car/little/old/red
12. small/box/a/metal/black
13. big/cat/a/fat/black
14. a(n)/painting/old/French/interesting
15. a/village/lovely/old/little

**10. Translate into English:**

1. Cu cât vei fi mai gras, cu atât mai scurtă îți va fi viața.
2. Astăzi este din ce în ce mai ușor să călătorești.
3. Cu cât vorbeam mai mult, cu atât eram mai abătut.
4. Am citit ambele lucrări și cred că a ta este cea mai bună.
5. Tot mai puțin oameni cred în aceste idei.
6. Era cu atât mai frumos filmul, cu cât acțiunea semăna cu povestea noastră.
7. Dintre cei doi frați, George este cel mai harnic și cel mai ambițios.
8. Cu cât poți vinde mai multe bilete, cu atât mai bine.

## THE ADVERB

### KINDS

Tipuri de adverbe:

- a) **Adverbs of manner** (de mod): Ex.: carefully, quickly, in a friendly way
- b) **Adverbs of place** (de loc): Ex.: abroad, downstairs, over here
- c) **Adverbs of time** (de timp): Ex.: on Saturday. now, tomorrow, eventually
- d) **Adverbs of frequency** (de frecvență): Ex.: always. often. sometimes, again
- e) **Adverbs of degree and approximation** (de grad și de aproximație):  
Ex.: almost, a bit, very much, only, extremely, enough
- f) **Sentence adverbs** (referitoare la întreaga propoziție):  
Ex: obviously, luckily, hopefully, naturally
- g) **Adverbs of cause, reason, result and concession** (de cauza, de scop, consecutive și concesive):  
Ex: hence, consequently, therefore, still, because
- h) **Relative - Interrogative adverbs** (relativ- interrogative):  
Ex.: how, where, when, why

### FORMATION OF ADVERBS Formarea adverbelor

1. Most adverbs are formed by adding the suffix **-ly** to adjectives (Majoritatea adverbelor se formează adăugând sufixul **-ly** la adjectivul corespunzător).

Ex.: She is sad. = Ea este trista.//She speaks sadly.

He answered promptly. = El a răspuns prompt.

He gave a prompt answer. = El a dar un raspuns prompt.

### NOTE:

- There are adjectives ending in **-ly**. They make up adverbial phrases. (Există adjective care se termină cu **-ly**. Acestea vor face locuțiuni adverbiale.)  
Ex friendly, likely, lonely, lovely.  
Ex.: in a friendly way.
- There are adverbs with 2 forms but the same meaning. (Unele adverbe au două forme diferite, cu același înțeles).  
Ex.: loud -loudly, quick -quickly. bright -brightly
- There are pairs of adverbs with differences in meaning (Există perechi de adverbe, fiecare având sens diferit de celălalt):

close = aproape	closely = îndeaproape
deep = în adâncime	deeply = profund
direct = direct, drept	directly -= în.mod mod direct, imediat
easy -= calm, user, încet	easily = cu

fair = corect onest	fairly = corect, cum se cuvine, destul de
free= liber	freely = liber, în mod neconstrâns
hard = mult, greu	hardly = cu greu, din greu, deabia
high = sus	highly -foarte, extrem de.
just = tocmai	justly = pe drept
late = târziu light = usor	lately in ultima vreme lightly = cu ușurință, superficial
most - cel mai mult	mostly = in general
near = aproape, langa	nearly = aproximativ
pretty = destul de right = chiar, drept, intocmai, de tot wrong = gresit, complet wide = larg	prettily = draguț rightly = bine, correct, pe drept widely = mult, pe o suprafața mare wrongly = in mod gresit

**2. Other suffixes for adverb formation may be mentioned** (Adverbele se formează și cu sufixe) :

- ward(s) Ex.: northward, backwards
- Way(S) Ex.: sideway  
Ex: clockwise
- S** Ex: nowadays
- long** Ex. side

“ as well as prefixes (... și prefixe):

- a-** Ex: along
- be- Ex.: beside
- to- Ex :tomorrow



## POSITION

- The position of adverbs is determined by the place of the word it modifies:  
Ex: quite nice
- When there are more adverbs of different kinds, then the word order is: Manner, Place, Time  
Ex.: She waited anxiously at the airport for five hours.
- When there are several adverbs of Time or Place, those which point out to the details come before the more general adverbs.  
Ex: They did the work in a few minutes yesterday.
- The adverbs of exact time (tomorrow, yesterday, last month) are placed at the beginning or at the end of the sentence.  
Ex: Yesterday, she stayed indoors. = she stayed indoors yesterday.
- The adverbs of indefinite time may be placed between the subject (or auxiliary) and the verb.  
Ex.: I once lied about my sister. I have recently changed my job.
- Adverbs of definite frequency (once a week, daily, on Sundays, again) are placed at the end of the sentence. Ex.: I go swimming once a week.
- Adverbs of indefinite frequency (always, usually, sometimes, often, never) come before the verb or after the first auxiliary.  
Ex.: I am usually eager to do such Jobs. I have often helped him.
- Sentence adverbs (generally, hopefully, evidently) go at the beginning of the sentence or before the verb.  
Ex.: Honestly, the situation is very serious.  
I honestly believe that the situation is very serious.
- The above adverbs can go at the beginning of a sentence for special emphasis.

## THE ADVERB - EXERCISES

### ELEMENTARY

#### 1. Complete the gaps with the adverbs resulted from the adjectives between brackets (Completați spațiile libere cu adverbe formate din adjectivele din paranteze):

1. We had to wait for a long time but we didn't complain. We waited .....  
(patient).
2. We didn't go out because it was raining ..... (heavy).
3. I lost the match because I played very ..... (bad).
4. I don't think he trusted me. He looked at me so .....(suspicious).
5. Nobody knew he was coming. He arrived ..... (unexpected).
6. Jill won't stay in that company too long She is only working there .....  
(temporary) until she can find a better job.
7. My French isn't very good, but I can understand .....(perfect) if people  
speak (slow) and ..... (clear).
8. I had little difficulty finding a flat. I found one quite ..... (easy).

#### 2. Put the adverbs in the brackets in the right degree of comparison. Then translate the sentences. (Puneți adverbele din paranteze la gradul de comparație potrivit. Apoi traduceți.):

1. Do the work ..... (slowly) than you usually do, because I'm in a hurry. '  
.....
2. Please, drive ..... (fast) so that we may catch the plane.  
.....

3. Mark solved the problem..... (well) than anyone else.  
.....
4. Which of them did the work ..... (well) ?  
.....
5. He went .....(far) as I did.  
.....
6. This month he worked .....(much) and got ..... (little) than he expected.  
.....
7. Of all the students, Jerry performed ..... (little).  
.....

### INTERMEDIATE

**3. Decide whether the underlined words are right or wrong. Correct those which are wrong.** (Verificați dacă unele din cuvintele subliniate sunt greșite și corectăți-le):

Examples: We lost the match because we didn't play very good. WRONG -well

Ann has been working very hard recently. RIGHT

1. Give my best wishes to your parents. I hope they are well. .....
2. The children behaved themselves very good. .....
3. I tried hardly to remember his name but I couldn't. ....
4. The company's financial situation is not well at present. ....
5. Jack has started his own business. Everything is going quite good. .....
6. Don't walk so fast! Can't you walk more slowly? .....
7. See you soon! Don't work too hard. .....

**4. Choose a half-sentence from the first column to go with a half-sentence from the second column.** (Faceți propoziții de genul "cu cât... cu atât...", combinând propozițiile din prima coloană cu cele din coloana a doua):

the earlier we leave	the faster you'll learn
the longer he waited	the more you have to pay the-
the more I got to know him	the sooner we'll arrive
the more you practice your English	the more profit you'll make
the longer the telephone call	the more impatient he became
the more goods you sell	the more I liked him

1. The earlier we leave, the sooner we'll arrive.
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....
5. ....
6. ....

### ADVANCED

**5. Decide whether to use adverbs or adjectives.** (Hotărâți dacă folosiți adverbe sau adjective):

1. The driver was serious/seriously hurt in the accident.
2. The damage to the building was very serious/seriously.
3. My grandfather always talks serious/seriously.

4. The dog usual/usually barks loud/loudly.
5. The new clerk didn't stick to the usual/usually order.
6. The loud/loudly music from the neighbours sounds terrible/terribly.
7. She was smiling happy/happily.
8. We wish you a Happy/Happily New Year.
9. The mountain is very high/highly.
10. She speaks with a very high/highly voice.
11. She is always high/highly elegant/elegantly.
12. Surprising/Surprisingly, he real/really came to the party.
13. He was very polite/politely when he heard the surprising/surprisingly news.
14. Mary speaks French very good/well.
15. I have some good/well news for you.
16. The house was complete/completely empty.
17. She has a complete/completely dinner set.
18. The buses run regular/regularly.
19. He should attend class regular/regularly.
20. English is easy/easily to learn.
21. English can be learned easy/easily.
22. Simon is a careless/carelessly driver.
23. Especial/Especially when he has had a few drinks, he drives careless/carelessly.
24. He shouldn't real/really have a driving licence.
25. He is a real/really danger to the other people.

**6. Put the adverbs or adverbial phrases in suitable positions.** (Completați cu adverbele sau locuțiunile adverbiale la locul potrivit):

1. The student went (at 7 0' clock/ to the bus stop).  
.....
2. My sister Maud was studying (in her room/very hard/yesterday/all day).  
.....
3. He has been (to London/in his life/never).  
.....
4. Let's go (this evening/to the cinema).  
.....
5. Sue sang (at the competition/very well/in Oxford/2 days ago).  
.....
6. The visitors had to wait (in front of the door/a little while).  
.....
7. Come! (soon/again).  
.....
8. He has been (twice/in the park/today).  
.....
9. Our friend helps me (usually/in the garden/at the weekend).  
.....
10. The cat was lying (on the sofa/quietly)  
.....

## THE PRONOUN

### THE PERSONAL PRONOUN PRONUMELE PERSONAL FORM

		SUBJECT		OBJECT	
Sg.	1 <sup>st</sup> pers	<b>I</b>	eu	<b>me</b>	pe mine, <u>me</u>
	2 <sup>nd</sup> pers	<b>you</b>	tu	<b>you</b>	pe tine, <u>tie</u>
	3 <sup>rd</sup> pers	<b>he</b>	el	<b>him</b>	pe el, lui
		<b>she</b>	ea	<b>her</b>	Pe ea, ei
		<b>it</b>	pt obiecte și animate	<b>it</b>	
Pl	1 <sup>st</sup> pers	<b>we</b>	noi	<b>us</b>	pe noi, <u>noastră</u>
	2 <sup>nd</sup> pers	<b>you</b>	voi	<b>you</b>	pe voi, <u>voastră</u>
	3 <sup>rd</sup> pers	<b>they</b>	ei, ele	<b>them</b>	pe ei, pe ele, <u>lor</u>

NOTE: In English the object pronoun has a single form. It is the preposition that shows the case (Accusative, Dative) or the type of complement (Direct, Indirect). (În limba engleză, pronumele complement direct are o singură formă. Cazul pronumelui sau tipul complementului sunt arătate de prepoziție.)

Ex.: I know her      I'm speaking to her.      I'm thinking of her.

Eu o cunosc pe ea .Eu îi vorbesc ei.      Mă gândesc la ea.

- the object pronoun never precedes the verb in English (Complementul direct nu precede niciodată verbul, în engleză):

Ex.; I gave the book to John.      I gave it to him

!-am dat cartea lui John I-am dat-o.

- position of pronouns used as direct and indirect objects (poziția pronumelor cu funcție de c. dir. și c. indir ):

- when there's a noun and a pronoun, the latter comes first (complementul exprimat prin pronume stă înaintea celui exprimat prin substantiv)

Ex: I gave John the book.      I gave the book to John.

I gave him the book.      I gave it to John.

-when there are two pronouns => D.O + LO (când ambele complemente sunt exprimate prin pronume, c. dir. stă înaintea c. indir)      Ex.: I gave it to him.

- uses of **it** (**it** se folosește ca):

- to talk about a thing or an animal (pronume care se referă la obiecte și animale):

Ex.: I have a car. It is white.      This is a dog. It is an old one.

- as subject in a sentence about time or weather (ca subiect impersonal):

Ex.: It is 5.30. It is raining.

- to emphasize a word or a phrase (în expresii care accentuează):

Ex: It is the dog who ate the pie.      •

- as a subject when the clause comes later in, the sentence (ca element antepus propoziției la care se referă):

Ex: It is sad that he failed.

- **you** and **they** may be used to speak about people in general. (pronumele you și they se folosesc pentru a vorbi despre un subiect general)  
Ex: **They** say **you** never know the whole truth. (Se spune că nu se poate sti adevărul întreg.)

## THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE PRONUMELE ȘI ADJECTIVUL POSESIV FORM

### Adjectives

Sg.	1 <sup>st</sup> pers	<b>my</b>	<b>car/ cars</b>
	2 <sup>nd</sup> pers	<b>your</b>	
	3 <sup>rd</sup> pers	<b>his her its</b>	
Pl.	1 <sup>st</sup> pers	<b>our</b>	
	2 <sup>nd</sup> pers	<b>your</b>	
	3 <sup>rd</sup> pers	<b>their</b>	

Sg.	1 <sup>st</sup> pers	<b>mine</b>
	2 <sup>nd</sup> pers	<b>yours</b>
	3 <sup>rd</sup> pers	<b>his hers its</b>
Pl.	1 <sup>st</sup> pers	<b>ours</b>
	2 <sup>nd</sup> pers	<b>yours</b>
	3 <sup>rd</sup> pers	<b>theirs</b>

### NOTE:

- The possessive adjectives in English refer to the possessor and not to the thing possessed; thus there is no agreement in gender and number. (În lb. engleză adjectivul posesiv se referă la posesor, nu la obiectul posedat, așadar nu există accord în gen și număr. )  
Ex.: my husband, my wife, my children= soțul meu. Soția mea, copii mei Pronouns follow the same rule (Pronumele urmează aceeași regulă):  
Ex: This is my book. It is mine. = Aceasta este cartea mea. Este a mea.  
These are my books. They are mine. = Acestea sunt cărțile mele. Sunt ale mele.
- possessive adjectives can be emphasized by own (adjectivele posesive pot fi întărite cu adjectivul own = propriu):  
Ex: He's driving his own car. = El conduce propria mașină.
- possessive pronouns are never preceded by a determiner (pronumele posesive nu sunt precedate de un determinat):  
Ex.: This book is mine and that is yours.  
Această carte este a mea și aceea este a ta.
- Some expressions: A friend of mine (one or my friends) = un prieten al meu  
(câteva expresii) That's another idea of his! = aceasta este încă una din ideile lui

## THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE PRONUMELE ȘI ADJECTIVUL DEMONSTRATIV FORM

SINGULAR	PLURAL
THIS	THESE
THAT	THOSE

NOTE: These forms stand for both pronouns and adjectives (Aceste forme sunt folosite și ca pronume, și ca adjectiv):

**Pronouns** (point out)

**Adjectives** (precede a noun)

Pronumele desemneaza ceva anume  
Ex: This is my brother  
What's that?.

Adjectivul precede un substantiv  
This boy is my brother.  
What's that object?

## USES

**THIS / THESE** - express proximity in time and space (sunt demonstrative de apropiere):

Ex: This week I'll finish my novel.(future) = Săptămâna aceasta voi termina romanul.  
He hasn't been himself these days.(past) = Nu a fost în apele lui săptămâna asta  
This flower, here, near my foot is called cowslip or Primula officinalis. =  
Această floare, aici lângă piciorul meu, se numește ciuboțica cucului sau Primula officinalis

**THAT / THOSE** - used for objects or persons that are at a certain distance away from the speaker (sunt demonstrative de depărtare):

Ex.: Those were the happy days of my childhood. = Acelea erau cele mai fericite zile ale copilăriei mele.  
That car over there belongs to my grandfather. = Acea mașină de acolo aparține bunicului meu.

NOTE for advanced students:

- **this/that** as pronouns can represent clauses:  
Ex: Henry was We yesterday. This made Ann angry.  
They **decided** to go to the theatre instead of the cinema. That was a bad choice.
- demonstratives used with one/ones in comparisons or selections.  
Ex.: Which dress would you like? I'd try that one, from the second shelf  
This girl is my sister and that (one) is my cousin.
- use of demonstrative adjectives + noun + of yours/Mike's  
Ex.: That car or yours is always breaking dawn.

## THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN AND THE EMPHATIC PRONOUN PRONUMELE REFLEXIV SI PRONUMELE DE INTARIRE FORM

Sg.	1 <sup>st</sup> pers	<b>myself</b>
	2 <sup>nd</sup> pers	<b>yourself</b>
	3 <sup>rd</sup> pers	<b>himself</b>
		<b>herself</b>
		<b>itself</b>

Sg.	1 <sup>st</sup> pers	<b>Ourselves</b>
	2 <sup>nd</sup> pers	<b>Yourselves</b>
	3 <sup>rd</sup> pers	<b>themselves</b>

## USES

- **Reflexive use:** when the action of the verb returns to the doer the subject and the object are the same person. (Ca pronume reflexive: când acțiunea verbului se exercită asupra agentului care o face: subiectul și complementul se referă la una și aceeași persoană)  
Ex.: He killed himself. = S-a sinucis. He spoke to himself = își vorbea sieși.  
**Note:** It is not used whenever we have a reflexive verb in Romanian. (Nu exista corespondență exactă între folosirea reflexivului românesc și a celui englez)  
Ex.: Did you wash this morning? = Te-ai spălat azi-dimineață?  
Of course, then I dressed and I went out. = Desigur, apoi m-am îmbrăcat și am ieșit în oraș.

**Some expressions:** (câteva expresii)

to enjoy oneself = e se distra                      to behave oneself = a nu fi neastamparat  
to help oneself to something = a se servi    to speak for oneself = a vorbi in nume  
propriu

**Emphatic use:** to emphasize a noun/pronoun (ca pronume de intarire: pentru a intari un substantive sau un pronume):

Ex.: I did it myself. = Eu insumi am facut acest lucru.

I'll speak to the President himself. = Voi vorbi cu insusi Presedintele:.

## **THE RECIPROCAL PRONOUN FORM.**

EACH OTHER    ONE ANOTHER  
= UNUL PE ALTUL, UNUL ALTUIA

### **USES**

They express a mutual relationship between the subject and the object (Exprima o relatie reciproca intre subiect si complement).

- they do not vary (nu isi schimba forma in functie de gen, nr. sau caz)

Ex.: The three children helped each other. = Cei trei copii se ajutau reciproc.

- the two words are never separated by a preposition (prepozitia nu separa niciodata cele doua cuvinte):

Ex.: They relied on one another. = Contau unul pe celalalt,

They looked at each other. = S-au uitat unul la celalalt.

- many English verbs have a reciprocal meaning and do not need a reciprocal pronoun (multe verbe din limba engleza au sens reciproc si nu mai au nevoie de pronume reciproc)

Ex: We met at the station. They were quarrelling. = Ne-am intalnit in statie (unii cu alții. Ei se certau (unul cu celalalt)

- note the difference between (observati diferenta dintre):

they looked at themselves

they looked at each other

se uitau la propriul lor chip

se uitau unul la altul

## THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN / ADJECTIVE / ADVERB PRONUMELE, ADJECTIVELE ȘI ADVERBELE INTEROGATIV-RELATIVE

### FORM AND USES

	Subject	Object
Human	<b>WHO</b> Who came yesterday	<b>WHO/WHOM</b> Who/whom did you see? Who did you talk to? To whom <b>did you talk?</b>
Non-human	<b>WHAT</b> What happened?	<b>WHAT</b> What did you do? What did you look at?

<b>ADJ</b>	Sg.	<i>1<sup>st</sup> pers</i>	<b>myself</b>
		<i>2<sup>nd</sup> pers</i>	<b>yourself</b>
		<i>3<sup>rd</sup> pers</i>	<b>himself</b>
			<b>herself</b>
			<b>itself</b>

choice	non limited	<b>WHAT</b> What country do you prefer?
	Limited	<b>WHICH</b> Which do you want, this one that one?
belonging		<b>WHOSE</b>

### INTEROGATIVE ADVERBS

time	<b>WHEN</b>	When did you arrive?
space	<b>WHERE</b>	Where did you go?
manner	<b>HOW</b>	How did he do it?

degree	<b>HOW MUCH</b>	How much hope do you have?
	<b>HOW MANY</b>	How many babies do you want?
	<b>HOW LONG</b>	How long has he waited?
	<b>HOW OFTEN</b>	How often does he call you?
	<b>HOW OLD/TALL</b>	How old/tall are you?

#### Some expressions:

Tell me who's who! = Spune-mi cine-i fata. Who is who? = Anuarul notabilităților.  
 He knows what's what El le știe pe toate Don't know which is which = Nu le pot deosebi  
 What about? What of that? What then? What about watching TV? = Ce-a zice să...

/ How do you feel about..

## THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

	NOUN	-BODY/ -ONE	-THING	-WHERE
SOME	(+) VREO/NIȘTE He is selling some books.	(+) CINEVA I saw somebody yesterday.	(+) CEVA I heard something.	(+) UNDEVA He is somewhere.
ANY	(?) VREO/NIȘTE Is he selling any books? (+) ORICE/ORICARE Any book sold by him must be interesting (-)NICI O/ UN He isn't selling any book.	(?) CINEVA Did you see anybody in the hall? (+) ORICINE Anyone should first knock and than enter the hall. (-) NIMENI I did not see anybody yesterday.	(?) CEVA Did you hear anything? (+) ORICE Anything you hear is important for me. (-) NIMIC I didn't hear anything.	(?) UNDEVA Is he anywhere in the garden? (+) ORIUNDE Anywhere he is, I must find him. (-) NICIUNDE He isn't anywhere.
NO	(-) NICI O/UN	(-) NIMENI I saw nobody yesterday.	(-) NIMIC I heard nothing	(-) NICIUNDE He is nowhere.

## PRONOUNS - EXERCISES

### ELEMENTARY

**1. Choose the correct word** (Alegeți cuvântul corect):

1. We/Us went with themselves/them.
2. They knew all about I/me and my friend.
3. He/his/him gave me he/his/him watch. I thanked he/his/him a lot.
4. I told she/her my plan and she/her told me she/her opinion about it.
5. There are some letters for you and I/me.
6. I came here with John and she/her/her's.
7. Jack bought some sweets for his/him mother.
8. Give we/our/us the report of the meeting.
9. Who's there? It's I/me.
10. They/Them/Their mother told they/them to behave them/themselves.

**2. Add a question-word to the following questions** (Adăugați pronumele, adjectivul sau adverbul interogativ):

1. .... is your name? .
2. .... is that pretty girl?

3. .... is your telephone number?
4. Here are the books. .... is yours?
5. .... is coming to tea?
6. .... colour is it?
7. .... of you made the mistake?
8. .... do you leave, tomorrow or on Monday?
9. .... is your brother? I haven't seen him lately.
10. .... .. is the movie you saw last night? Did you really like it?
11. .... much does it cost?
12. .... many children do you have?
13. To .... do you lend the book first?
14. .... are you? I'm fine, thanks.
15. .... are you doing this evening? Will you go out with me?

### INTERMEDIATE

#### 3. Add the missing possessives (Adăugați pronumele și adjectivele posesive potrivite):

1. This doesn't look like \_\_\_\_\_ book. It must be \_\_\_\_\_
2. Tell him not to forget \_\_\_\_\_ ticket. She mustn't forget \_\_\_\_\_ either.
3. They have two of \_\_\_\_\_ houses, in this street, and the house on the corner is also \_\_\_\_\_
4. Let's change our hats! You can take \_\_\_\_\_ and give me \_\_\_\_\_
5. We've taken \_\_\_\_\_ share. Has she taken \_\_\_\_\_?
6. John has come to see me; \_\_\_\_\_ father and \_\_\_\_\_ were school friends.
7. I see that he has lost \_\_\_\_\_ pencil; perhaps you can lend him \_\_\_\_\_
8. Can you lend us \_\_\_\_\_ car? \_\_\_\_\_ is broken down.

#### 4. Fill the gaps with the reflexive pronouns. Then translate the sentences (Completați cu pronumele de întărire. Apoi traduceți propozițiile):

1. That's my book. I bought it .....  
.....
2. It was given to him by the queen .....  
.....
3. She has made.. ..... very unpopular.  
.....
4. They enjoyed ..... very much at the air show.  
.....
5. Have we got to do it all by .....  
.....

#### 5. Add some, any, one or ones, as required. (Adăugați some, any, one sau ones pentru a forma pronume și adjective nehotărâte):

- t. I want \_\_\_\_\_ new potatoes; have you \_\_\_\_\_?
2. You have a lot of apples; please, give me \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I asked him for, \_\_\_\_\_ but he hadn't \_\_\_\_\_.
4. These loaves are stale; please give me \_\_\_\_\_ new \_\_\_\_\_.
5. I'll have a cigarette. Will you have \_\_\_\_\_ too.
6. Are there some \_\_\_\_\_ books? I've read all these old \_\_\_\_\_
7. Have you had \_\_\_\_\_ tea? I can give you \_\_\_\_\_.
8. We have \_\_\_\_\_ new shirts in today. Do you want to buy \_\_\_\_\_? The green \_\_\_\_\_ are very nice.

**ADVANCED**

6. Translate into Romanian.

This is a story about four people named: Everybody, Somebody, Anybody and Nobody. There was an important job to be done and Everybody was sure that Somebody will do it. Anybody could have done it, but Nobody did it. Somebody got angry about that, because it was everybody's job. Everybody thought Anybody could do it but Nobody realised that Everybody wouldrr, do it. It ended up that Everybody blamed Somebody when Nobody did what Anybody could have done.

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

7. Translate into English.

1. Cei doi tineri se uitau unul la altul și păreau că nu înțeleg nimic.

.....

2. Cine altcineva ar vrea să împartă prăjitura cu noi?

.....

3. Ea se plânge că nu aude bine.

.....

4. Însuși/Chiar doctorul i-a spus să nu mai fumeze.

.....

5. Ai niște bani? Nu mi-a mai rămas nici unul.

.....

6. Nimeni n-a ajutat-o, a trebuit să termine proiectul singură.

.....

7. Cineva intrat în casă dar nu a găsit nimic de furat și a plecat fără nimic.

## THE NUMERAL

### THE CARDINAL NUMERAL FORM

0 zero	10 ten	20 twenty	100 a (one) hundred
1 one	11 eleven	21 twenty-one	204 two hundred and
2 two	12 twelve	22 twenty-two	1,000 a(one)thousand
3 three	13 thirteen*	30 thirty*	5,642 five thousand six hundred
4 four	14 fourteen	40 forty*	and forty two
5 five	15 fifteen*	50 fifty*	1,000,000 a (one)
6 six	16 sixteen	60 sixty	2,000,000 two million
7 seven	17 seventeen	70 seventy	1,000,000,000 a (one) billion
8 eight	18 eighteen*	80 eighty*	
9 nine	19 nineteen	90 ninety	*Do not forget the spelling

### NOTES

- In English they use the comma (,) to indicate thousands and the point (.) to show decimals, as opposed to Romanian where it is the other way round (În limba engleză se folosește virgula pentru a indica miile și punctul pentru a indica zecimalele, invers decât în română):  
Ex: 2,000 = two thousand = două mii 6.9 = five point nine = 6 virgulă 9
- when writing in words or reading a compound figure, and is placed before the last word (când se citește sau se scrie în cuvinte, un număr mai mare de 100 primește conjuncția and = și înainte de ultimul cuvânt):  
Ex.: 365 three hundred and sixty-five 1219 one thousand two hundred and nineteen

### USES

#### For advanced students:

- hundred, thousand, million can take the plural form when they are not cardinal numeral (In this case they are followed by the preposition of)  
Ex.: hundreds of people, thousands of books, millions of pounds  
But: several hundred **people** = mai multe sute de oameni  
some two thousand books = vreo două mii de cărți
- **a dozen** (o duzină), a score (echivalent pentru 20, un "pol") are followed directly by the noun  
Ex.: a dozen eggs, two score people  
But: dozens of eggs, scores of people
- when used in the plural, the tens refer to years'  
Ex.: I like the fashion of the sixties. (60-69)  
He was in his fifties, though he looked younger. (50-59)
- 0 is called - zero, when used alone
  - nought, when used in decimal fractions: 0.05 (nought point nought five)
  - O [ou], in telephone numbers 335408 (double three five four O eight)

### THE ORDINAL NUMERAL FORM

1st the first	11 <sup>th</sup> the eleventh	21st the twenty-first	31st thirty-first
2nd the second	12 <sup>th</sup> the twelfth	22nd the twenty-second	40th the fortieth

3rd the third	13 <sup>th</sup> the thirteenth	23rd the twenty-third	50th the fiftieth
4th the fourth	14 <sup>th</sup> the fourteenth	24th the twenty-fourth	60th the sixtieth
5th the fifth	15 <sup>th</sup> the fifteenth	25th the twenty-fifth	70th the seventieth
6th the sixth	16 <sup>th</sup> the sixteenth	26th the twenty-sixth	80th the eightieth
7th the seventh	17 <sup>th</sup> the seventeenth	27th the twenty-seventh	90th the ninetieth
8th the eighth	18 <sup>th</sup> the eighteenth	28th the twenty-eighth	100th the (one) hundredth
9th the ninth	19 <sup>th</sup> the nineteenth	29th the twenty-ninth	1,000th the (one) thousandth
10th the tenth	20th the twentieth	30th the thirtieth	1,000,000 the (one) millionth

Do not forget the spelling.

### NOTES

- Do not forget to add the last two letters when expressing the ordinal numeral in figures (nu uitați să adăugați terminația în litere, atunci când scrieți numeralul ordinal în cifre):  
21<sup>st</sup>
- in compound ordinal numbers the rule about and is the same as to compound cardinal numbers: (regula cu conjuncția and = și este aceeași ca la numerale cardinale)  
(the 302<sup>nd</sup> the three hundred and second)

### USES

Y It shows the order of persons, things or actions in time or space (arata **ordinea persoanelor lucrurilor și acțiunilor în timp și spațiu**)

Ex.:

But we use cardinal numerals

in:

Richard III (the Third) lived in the 15<sup>th</sup> (fifteenth) century  
chapter 3 (three)

Lesson 12 (twelve),

He lives on the third floor.

He lives in flat 55

The First World War

World War I (one)

I like the second act more than the first one

Act II (two),

Scene I (one)

**NOTE for advanced students: the is omitted in some expressions:**

Ex: love at first sight, to give a second chance

**For advanced students:**

### THE FRACTIONAL NUMERAL

#### FORM

a) common fractions: 1/2 one half, 2/3 two thirds, 3/4 three fourths, 4/5 four fifths, 5/6 five sixths etc.

b) decimal fractions: 12.25 twelve point twenty-five; 0.05 nought point nought five (in Romanian, 12,25; 0,05)

#### USES

- It shows one or several parts of the whole: He translated only one third of the document.

### THE MULTIPLICATIVE NUMERAL

#### FORM

1 x once, single

2 x twice, double, twofold

3 x three times (thrice), triple, threefold

4 x four times, fourfold

10x ten times, tenfold  
 100 x a hundred times, a hundredfold

**USES**

It shows the proportion: I've already seen this movie twice, let's go to another cinema.  
 Which kind of room do you want me to book for you: single or a double?  
 If I have a sixfold increase of my revenues, I'll pay you tenfold.

**THE NUMERAL - EXERCISES**

**ELEMENTARY**

**1. Write the following numbers.** (Scrieți următoarele numere în litere):

408 .....  
 5,729.....  
 25.100 ..... 721,963  
 ..... 4,201, 953

**2. Read the following numbers.** (Read the following phone numbers):

2118605 two double one eight six O[ou] five  
 4255799 .....  
 3197300 .....  
 6426542 .....  
 1418956 .....  
 2503326 .....

**3. Read the following dates** (Scrieți următoarele date în întregime):

Example- 21 June 1944 the twenty-first of June, nineteen ninety-four

16 April 1973 .....  
 2 March 1658 .....  
 24 June 2002 .....  
 1 November 1061 .....  
 02 July 1200 .....

**INTERMEDIATE**

**4. Write the following fractions.** (Scrieți în litere următoarele fracții):

1/3 .....  
 718.....  
 9/10 .....  
 6.08 .....  
 0.7 .....  
 0.001 .....  
 10.58 .....

**THE PREPOSITIONS**

**WORDS AND PHRASES USED AS PREPOSITIONS**

about	Behind	in	through
above	Below	in spite of	througho
across	Beneath	into	till
after	Beside	like/unlike	to
against	Between	near	toward
along	Beyond	of	under

among	By	off	until
around	Despite	on	up
as	Down	out	upon
at	During	out of	with
because of	For	over	within
before	From	since	without

### PREPOSITIONS OF TIME

at	a time	Ex.: at 9 o'clock
(la)	an age	Ex.: at fifteen
on	a day or a date	Ex.: on Thursday, on the 2 <sup>nd</sup> of March
(la. in data)	+ noun + gerund	Ex.: on departure Ex: on departing
in	a period of time	
(în aprilie, in 2 h)	-a certain moment of it - at the end of it - its length	Ex: in April, in 1973, Ex: to be ready in 5 minutes Ex.: to read a book in two hours
By/till/until (până la)	a time, date, period, (not later than that time)	Ex.: to be somewhere by midnight
before (de)	a time, date, period, event	Ex.: to go to bed before midnight (înainte)
after (după)	a time, date, period, event	Ex: to go after lunch
since (la)	a time	Ex.: to have been a teacher since 1998 (din, de)
for (timp)	a period	Ex.: to have been a teacher for 4 years (de un)
from ...to	a time (hour, noun)	Ex.: from s to z, from dawn to dusk (de la- la)
during (în timpul)	a period	Ex.: during March
around (în jurul, pe la)	a time	Ex. around 6 00, around noon

### PREPOSITIONS OF MOVEMENT AND PLACE

to (la)	used with verbs of movement	Ex.: to go to the cinema
into (în)	used with changes of place	Ex . to walk into/out of the shop
out of (afară din)		
at (la)	shows the place, not the direction	Ex: to arrive at the house
in (în)	used with towns	Ex: to arrive in Paris
out of (în afara)	the opposite of In"	Ex: to live out of Paris
by/beside (lângă)	at the side of	Ex: to stand by someone
against	leaned,near	Ex.: to lean against the wall

(sprijinit de, lângă)		
before	in front of	Ex.: to stand before someone
(în fața)		
behind	in the back of	Ex.: to look behind oneself
(în spatele)		
between	in the middle of	Ex.: to be between 2 persons
(între)		
down	in an inferior position	Ex.: to go down the street
(jos, în partea de jos)		
beneath/under/in	an inferior position	Ex.: to lie beneath a tree
(dedesubt/sub)		
up	in a superior position	Ex.: to be up the hill
(sus, în partea de sus)		
above/over	in a superior position	Ex.: to fly above the city
(deasupra)		to jump over the fence
from-to	the departure and the arrival points	
(de la - la)		Ex.: to go from home to school
round	circling a point	Ex.: to go round the well
(în jurul)		
Across	crossing a space	Ex.: to walk across the room
(de-a latul)		
along	following the length	Ex.: to walk along a river
(de-a lungul)		
through	in the middle of	Ex.: to look through the window,
(prin)		
on	placed over something	Ex.: to put the book on the table
(pe)		

### EXPRESSIONS INCLUDING PREPOSITIONS

at	at breakfast, at ease, at first, at home, at last, at least, at once, at present, at any rate, at school, at sea, at the theatre, at one time, one at the time, at times, at the same time, at war, at work
by	by accident, by air, by all means, by bus/car/train, by chance, by force, by heart, by no/any means, by mistake, by myself/yourself etc., by order, by surprise
for	for example, for good, for sake of, for sale, for the time being
from	from now on, from time to time
in	In difficulty, in fact, in fashion, in haste, in hospital, in a hurry, in love, in order to, in practice, in particular, in stock, in theory, in time, in turn, in use, in vain.
off	off the record
on	on fire, on foot, on holidays, on one hand, on the other hand, on purpose, on time, on one's way, on the whole
out of	out of bounds, out of breath, out of control, out of danger, out of date, out of doors, out of fashion, out of interest, out of order, out of practice, out of all proportion, out of the question, out of sight, out of turn out of use
to	to go... to church, to court, to hospital, to prison, to see, to school, to war
under	under the circumstances, under repair, under way
up	up to date, up to now
with	with luck, with no doubt

## ADJECTIVE + PREPOSITION

to be	pleased, sorry, worried	about
	angry, bad, clever, good	at
	bad, eager, good, sorry	for
	different, separate	from
	Interested	in
	afraid, aware, fond, full, proud, tired	of
	keen,	on
	contrary, married	to
	angry, fed up, pleased, satisfied,	with

## VERBS + PREPOSITION

complain, joke, speak, talk, think, worry	about
run, take	after
be, go, lean, protest, react, warn	against
aim, arrive, get, look, peep, peer, stare	at
account, apologize, ask, beg, call, care, charge, fall, long, pay, prepare, provide, search, vote, wait	for
borrow, come, differ, escape, prevent, protect, refrain, suffer	from
believe, fail, indulge, be interested, invest, participate, persist, succeed	in
break, get, go, run	into
accuse, smb, approve, consist, dream, get rid, smell, taste, suspect, think	of
act, agree, be based, comment, congratulate, smb., count, decide, depend, experiment, live, rely, spend money, waste time, work	on
add, smth, apply, attend, belong, compare, consent, listen, look forward, object, point, react, reply, be used, talk	to
agree, begin, communicate, comply, cope, fight, interfere, quarrel, be satisfied	with

## PREPOSITIONS - EXERCISES

### ELEMENTARY AND INTERMEDIATE

#### 1. Put in suitable prepositions (Completați cu prepozițiile potrivite):

- We don't go \_\_\_\_\_ school \_\_\_\_\_ Sundays.
- Wait \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ the bus-stop!
- Come \_\_\_\_\_ 10 \_\_\_\_\_ Friday morning.
- I bought this hat \_\_\_\_\_ fifty pence.
- Our cat was bitten \_\_\_\_\_ a dog.
- Put your books \_\_\_\_\_ the table.
- We went \_\_\_\_\_ the seaside \_\_\_\_\_ car.
- Here's a present \_\_\_\_\_ you.
- Many planes fly \_\_\_\_\_ the Atlantic nowadays.
- Read \_\_\_\_\_ line 10 \_\_\_\_\_ line 20 \_\_\_\_\_ page 7.
- He spoke \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ his hands \_\_\_\_\_ his pockets.

12. Don't look \_\_\_\_ me like that!
13. Get \_\_\_\_ the bus here, and get off \_\_\_\_\_ the third stop.
14. Let's go \_\_\_\_ awalk \_\_\_\_\_ the garden \_\_\_\_\_ dinner-time.
15. When we get back \_\_\_\_ ourwalk, we're going to sit \_\_\_\_\_ fire \_\_\_\_\_ our books \_\_\_\_\_ an hour.
16. The cat is hiding \_\_\_\_\_ us \_\_\_\_\_ the table.
17. Don't go out \_\_\_\_\_ the rain \_\_\_\_\_ a hat.
18. That school was founded \_\_\_\_\_ Edward VI \_\_\_\_\_ 1553.
19. Most people finish school \_\_\_\_ the age of 18
20. If you go \_\_\_\_\_ the beach you'll find a lot of sea-shells.

## PHRASAL VERBS

In English there are verbs followed by a particle which form a whole (În limba engleză există verbe urmate de o particulă; împreună formează un alt verb cu sens propriu.)

Ex.: to call = a chema, a telefona to call on = a vizita

**NOTE:** Do not take a phrasal verb for a verb with preposition! (Atenție! Un verb cu particula nu înseamnă un verb urmat de o prepoziție).

A **preposition** always precedes:

(O prepoziție întotdeauna precede)

- a noun phrase (un substantiv sau determinanții săi):

Ex.: They were reading in their room.

He is satisfied with this salary.

- or a pronoun (un pronume)

Ex.: We waited for him.

A **particle** -does not always precede a noun phrase:

(O particulă adverbială nu precede întotdeauna un substantiv sau determinant al acestuia):

Ex: He gave up. They went out.

- can precede or follow a direct object (poate precede sau urma un complement direct)

Ex.: He put his hat on. 1 He put on his hat

- must follow the pronoun (direct object) (dacă complementul direct este pronume, stă înaintea particulei)

Ex: He put it on.

Here are some examples of phrasal verbs (Iată câteva exemple de verbe cu particula):

### **BREAK**

**break down** - a dărâma, a nu mai funcționa, a slăbi (d.sănătate)

Ex. . They broke down the old house to build a better me

He worked too much over. That's why now he is breaking down.

**break up** - a (se) sparge a lua sfârșit (d. școala), a se certa

Ex. W hhen do you break up for Easter?

Unifortunately they broke up soon after they married,

### **CALL**

**call back**

- a suna din nou (la telefon), a suna pe cineva care a telefonat mai devreme

Ex.: "Oh, John is not there. Well, I'll call him back later on."

"Can you ask your brother to call me back when he's home?"

**call on**

- a vizita (a trece pe la)

Ex.: If you happen to come to London, call on me.

- call off** - a anula  
Ex : The meeting has been called off. That means we've lost another customer
- call up** - a suna la telefon  
Ex.: Has Bill called you up lately?
- CARRY**  
**carry out** - a duce la bun sfârșit, a îndeplini  
Ex.: A survey has been carried out by the best students of this group.  
She was fired for not having carried out the manager's instructions.
- CATCH**  
**catch on** - a prinde (a fi la modă)  
Ex. It was a popular style in Britain but it never really caught on in America.
- catch up with** - a ajunge din urmă  
Ex . I know he is better than me but I promise to catch up with him.
- CHECK**  
**check in** - a se înregistra la hotel sau aeroport  
Ex.: Has Mr. Douglas checked in? Yes, I gave him the key of his room.
- check off** - a bifa, a însemna  
Ex : I checked off the names of people I have already invited at our wedding.
- check out** - a achita nota și a părăsi hotelul, a verifica dacă un lucru este adevărat  
Ex He checked out, took his luggage and left in a hurry.  
Let's check out his story. Something tells me he's lying.
- check up** - a controla, a verifica  
Ex.: The teacher is checking the students' tests.
- COME**  
**come across** - a da din întâmplare peste ceva sau cineva  
Ex. I have recently come across some old letters
- come down to** - a se rezuma la  
Ex: It all came down to a choice between cutting wages or cutting staff
- come out** - a ieși la iveală  
Ex : As hard as he tried to hide the truth, his lie finally came off.
- come against** - a da de greutăți  
Ex.: If you insist acting like this you'll come against some big trouble.
- DO**  
**do away with** - a scăpa de, a distinge  
Ex: I have done away with my old shoes.
- do up** - a închide nasturii, a-și aranja fața, a renova  
Ex.: Do up your coat and hurry up!
- GET**  
**get along** - a se înțelege cu cineva  
Ex: They get along so well. I'm sure they will be a couple soon.
- get away with** - a scăpa basma curată  
Ex.: I didn't do my job, but my boss didn't notice. I got away with it for the moment.
- get down to** - a se apuca de ceva  
Ex.: He got down to Spanish as he will leave for Madrid soon.
- get on with** - a se înțelege cu cineva  
Ex: How do you get on with your new room-mate?
- GIVE**  
**give away** - a da pe gratis, a denunța  
Ex: I hope you won't give our little secret away.

**give in** - a abandona, a renunța  
Ex.: I am not in the mood of arguing with you, so I give in.

**give up** - a ceda  
Ex.: I gave up smoking a month ago.

## GO

**go along with** - a se alătura unei idei, a corespunde  
Ex.: The board went along with my suggestions. go back on

**go back on** - a nu se ține de cuvânt  
Ex: Usually he doesn't go back on his word.

**go off** - a se strica (despre mâncare)  
Ex.: The milk's gone off.

## KEEP

**keep away from** - a se ține departe de  
Ex: You'd better keep away from this kind of people.

**keep on** -a continua  
Ex: Keep on presenting your plan, don't stop because of me!

**keep up** -a menține nivelul ridicat  
Ex.: Keep up the good work!

**keep up with** - a merge în pas cu, a ține pasul  
Ex: She's the best. Her classmates can barely keep up with her.

## LET

**let down** - a dezamăgi  
Ex: I'm counting on you, don't let me down!

## LOOK

**look after** - a avea grijă, a supraveghea  
Ex.: Can you look after my children while I'm at the railway station?

**look down (up)on** - a disprețui, a se uita de sus  
Ex.: He looks down on anyone who hasn't had a college education,

**look forward to** - a aștepta cu nerăbdare (folosit în formula de încheiere din scrisorile oficiale)  
Ex.: We are looking forward to receiving an answer.

**look into** - a reflecta asupra unei probleme  
Ex: She's looking into her child behaviour carefully.

**look on** - a privi fără a interveni  
Ex.: When an accident happens, a lot of people stop to look on.

**look up** - a căuta în dicționar  
Ex: Every time you don't know an English word, you must look it up in the dictionary.

**look up to** - a admira pe cineva  
Ex.: She speaks 4 languages, that's why her colleagues look up to her.

## MAKE

**make out** - a intelege cu greu, a pretinde  
Ex: ! can scarcely make out his writing.  
She always makes out she's the only one who does any work at all.

**make up** - a inventa, a confecționa, a se farda  
Ex: She made up the whole story so that she shouldn't be punished.

I plan on making this material up into a dress.

Isn't Jane too young to make up her lips?

**make up for** - a compensa, a recupera, a înlocui  
Ex: Thank you for your help, I'll make up for you.

He missed school classes when he was ill, but he is clever enough to make up for lost time.

What Tom lacked in experience, he made up for in enthusiasm.

## **PASS**

### **pass away**

- eufemism pentru 'a muri', a se prăpădi

Ex.: She has been mourning ever since her dearest aunt passed away.

## **PUT**

### **put off**

- a descuraja, a amâna

Ex.: The idea of doing that chore again put me off. The meeting has been put off till next week.

### **put someone through**

- a face cuiva legătura telefonică

Ex: Hold on, I'll put you through to Mr. Jones.

### **put up with**

- a tolera, a se obișnui cu o situație

Ex.: His behaviour bothers me but I'll put up with it, eventually.

## **RUN**

### **run down**

- a lovi cu mașina, a nu mai funcționa, a critica

Ex.: Their cat was run down by a car yesterday.

The clock has run down, we have to change the battery.

He is jealous of you, that's why he keeps running you down.

### **run into**

- a întâlni din întâmplare

Ex.: Last week I ran into an old friend I hadn't seen for ages!

### **run out of**

- a termina, a rămâne fără

Ex: Our trip was awful: we ran out of gas in the middle of nowhere. Imagine the rest!

### **run up against-**

a întâmpina o problemă

Ex: We ran up against some unexpected opposition.

## **SEE**

### **see off**

- a conduce (la gară, la aeroport)

Ex: They've gone to the airport to see their daughter off.

### **see out**

- a conduce la

Ex.: John, will you see Mary out, please.

## **SET**

### **set in**

- a se instala (despre vreme)

Ex.: Winter seems to be setting in early this year.

### **set out**

- a porni la drum

Ex: This is the schedule of our trip: we meet in front of the hotel at 7.00 and set out half an hour later.

### **set up**

-a ridica, a înființa

Ex.:The plan was set up by our team, not by theirs.

## **STAND**

### **stand by**

- a rămâne la cuvântul dat, a fi gata de acțiune, a susține pe cineva moral

Ex.: Do you stand by what you said earlier?

There'll be a fireman standing by in case of trouble.

Will you stand by me in this conflict?

### **stand out**

- a ieși în evidență

Ex: This student stands out through his answers.

### **stand for**

- a reprezenta

Ex.: The abbreviation "i.e." comes from the Latin "id est" and stands for the expression "that is"

## **TAKE**

### **take after**

- a semăna cu, a moșteni trăsături

- Ex.: He takes his blue eyes after his mother.
- take in** - a păcăli, a înșela (folosit la diateza pasivă)  
Ex.: I was taken in by his nice words.
- take off** - a decola, a scoate (haina, etc.)  
Ex.: She had taken her hat off before the plane took off.
- take over** - a prelua  
Ex.: Their company has been taken over by another one.
- take up** - a se apuca de o activitate nouă  
Ex.: I was thinking to take up riding.
- TURN**
- turn off** - a închide (lumina, un aparat electric)  
Ex.: She remembered she had forgotten to turn off the iron before leaving the house.
- turn on** - a deschide, a aprinde  
Ex: Turn on the light: it's getting dark and I can't read anymore
- turn out** - a se dovedi  
Ex.: His statement turned out to be fake.
- turn up** - a apărea, a sosi  
Ex.: More people than we had expected turned up at the show.

Complete the list with the following phrasal verbs. Add other ones that seem important to you:

Phrasal verb	Definition	Example
hand over		
hand in		
figure out		
hold on		
break in		
get through to		
go out		
look out		
look over		

## PHRASAL VERBS- EXERCISES

### ELEMENTARY

1. Match the underlined expressions with the appropriate phrasal verbs (Cărei propoziții i se potrivește fiecare din verbele din tabelul de mai jos ?):

- |             |                |            |             |             |
|-------------|----------------|------------|-------------|-------------|
| a) get up   | b) sit down    | c) give up | d) let down | e) go out   |
| f) turn off | g) get on with | h) hold on | i) go on    | j) put down |

- Please, continue the story. It is very interesting.
- Every morning I must leave the bed at 6.00.
- Good morning, Mr. Smith. Please, have a seat.
- Liz is not home. She is in town with her new friend.
- Don't forget to switch the botton of the oven before leaving.
- Don't hang up, please. You will speak with Mr. Gill in a second.

7. She is my best friend, she never disappoints me.
8. This job is too hard for him. I think he will quit.
9. And now please write the new words in your vocabularies.
10. I like my old friend Ann. I share the same opinions with her.

**2. Put in suitable adverb particles.** (Completați cu particula adverbială potrivită):

across	after	down	for	off	on	out (x3)	up (x5)
--------	-------	------	-----	-----	----	----------	---------

1. He put \_\_\_\_\_ his coat and took the dog \_\_\_\_\_ for a walk.
2. Do you always get \_\_\_\_\_ at 7 o'clock in the morning?
3. It was silly of you to go \_\_\_\_\_ in the rain.
4. I'm fed \_\_\_\_\_ with this kind of work. I think I'm going to give \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. The London plane takes \_\_\_\_\_ at noon.
6. When you grow \_\_\_\_\_, you will be allowed to go \_\_\_\_\_ by yourself.
7. If you happen to come \_\_\_\_\_ my lost papers while you're looking \_\_\_\_\_ your book, know.
8. Shall I put his name \_\_\_\_\_ on this form?
9. I wasn't sure which dress to buy but I finally made \_\_\_\_\_ my mind.
10. I need a baby-sitter to look \_\_\_\_\_ my children while I'm away.  
please let me

**INTERMEDIATE**

**3. Pair these phrasal verbs with their corresponding explanation** (Uniți fiecare verb cu definiția corespunzătoare):

- |                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| to call off      | to continue                                   |
| to catch up with | to find or meet by chance                     |
| to bring up      | to visit                                      |
| to carry out     | to begin a journey                            |
| to set out       | to be on good                                 |
| to give up       | terms   |
| to call on       | to educate                                    |
| to get on with   | to put into                                   |
| to come across   | practice                                      |
| to keep on       | to cancel                                     |
|                  | to stop doing something                       |
|                  | to do all the work that has not yet been done |

**ADVANCED**

**4. Put in the correct prepositions or adverbs.** (Completați cu prepoziția sau particula corectă):

**GET (away, back, in, off, on with, on with, out of, over, through)**

1. If you got \_\_\_\_\_ your work instead of talking you'd be finished in half the time.
2. The office closes early on Fridays and we get \_\_\_\_\_ at 5 o'clock instead of six.
3. She is a friendly girl who gets \_\_\_\_\_ everyone she meets.
4. It took him a long time to get \_\_\_\_\_ the divorce.
5. I tried to ring him up but I couldn't get \_\_\_\_\_, I think the line is busy.
6. She talks so much that it is difficult to get \_\_\_\_\_ from her.
7. The train was delayed and only got \_\_\_\_\_ at midnight.
8. Don't worry about the snake, he can't get \_\_\_\_\_ his box.

9. I left my umbrella in the bus but i got it\_\_\_\_\_ from the Lost Property Office.

**BE (away, back, for, out, over, up to, up to )**

1. I don't think she's \_\_\_\_\_ the level of the rest of the class.
2. Is Mary in? No, she's \_\_\_\_\_ and won't be \_\_\_\_\_ till nine o'clock.
3. What shall we do now? I'm \_\_\_\_\_ keeping quiet and saying nothing.
4. As soon as the examinations are \_\_\_\_\_ we are going away on holiday.
5. I'm going to Berlin on business and I shall be \_\_\_\_\_ for a week.
6. Shall I marry him? It's \_\_\_\_\_ you. I can't decide for you.

**LOOK (after, ahead, back, down on, forward to, out, out for, out on, through, up, up to)**

1. Look -\_\_\_\_\_ the baby while I'm out.
2. You must look \_\_\_\_\_ and make plans for the future.
3. Looking \_\_\_\_\_ I see now all the mistakes I made when I was younger.
4. Look \_\_\_\_\_ me at the station. I'll be at the bookstall.
5. Look \_\_\_\_\_ You nearly knocked my cup out of my hand.
6. My windows look \_\_\_\_\_ the garden.
7. I am looking \_\_\_\_\_ seeing your new house.
8. She admires her aunt, who is an actress, and always looks \_\_\_\_\_ her.
9. She looks \_\_\_\_\_ her brother because he is younger and less clever than her.
10. He asked me to look \_\_\_\_\_ the document and then sign it.
11. If he doesn't know the word he can look it \_\_\_\_\_ in a dictionary.

**KEEP (away from, back, off, on, out, up, up with)**

1. He keeps \_\_\_\_\_ working and doesn't want to take a break.
2. Unfortunately, she is kept \_\_\_\_\_ in her work by her ignorance of languages.
3. "Keep \_\_\_\_\_!" he said. "Don't come any nearer!"
4. I told the children to keep \_\_\_\_\_ the room that was being painted.
5. I work at least ten hours a day for this project, but I don't know if I can keep this \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The man walked so fast that the child couldn't keep \_\_\_\_\_ him.
7. Because of her hurt ankle she was kept \_\_\_\_\_ of the team at that match.

**GO (away, back on, down, in for, off, on, out, through, through with, up)**

1. He had a sandwich and a cup of tea, then he went \_\_\_\_\_ working.
2. The gun went \_\_\_\_\_ by accident and wounded him in the leg.
3. She went \_\_\_\_\_ a beauty contest and got a prize.
4. The early colonists of Canada went \_\_\_\_\_ many hardships.
5. You can't go \_\_\_\_\_ your promise now, we are depending on you.
6. I have changed my mind about marrying him; I simply can't go \_\_\_\_\_ it.
7. Mary went \_\_\_\_\_ in such a hurry that she left her passport behind.
8. She goes \_\_\_\_\_ a lot. She hardly ever spends an evening at home.
9. Prices go \_\_\_\_\_ again. Can't they ever go \_\_\_\_\_ ?

**COME (across, into, on, out, over to, round, up)**

1. He came \_\_\_\_\_ to my way of thinking after a good deal of argument.

2. It's no use trying to keep it secret; it's sure to come \_\_\_\_\_ in the end.
3. The question of salary increases will come \_\_\_\_\_ at the next general meeting.
4. Seeing me from across the room, she came \_\_\_\_\_ me and said that she had a message for me.
5. He came \_\_\_\_\_ a fortune last year. (He inherited it)
6. Come \_\_\_\_\_, you're not going to tell me you believed everything she said!
7. I came \_\_\_\_\_ Johanna in the Mall yesterday. I really didn't expect to meet her there.

**TAKE (after, back, for, in, off, out, over, up)**

1. She makes a little extra money by taking-paying guests in summer.
2. She took \_ swimming because she wanted to lose weight.
3. He takes \_ his mother; he has blue eyes and fair hair too.
4. I'm sorry I called you a liar. I take it-.
5. You'd better take - your coat if you're too hot.
6. When his father died, Tom took the business.
7. People often take me - my si\_ster. We are ve^- much alike.
8. He always takes- his false teeth before he goes to bed.

**RUN (after, away with, down, into, out of, through, up)**

1. He has already run \_\_\_\_\_ the money his father left him two years ago.
2. Now he is running \_\_\_\_\_ bills all over the town.
3. I can't start the car; the battery has run -
4. The policeman ran \_\_\_\_\_ the thief.
5. Don't run \_\_\_\_\_ the idea that Scotsmen are mean. They just don't like wasting money.
6. I ran \_\_\_\_\_ an old school friend in the tube yesterday.
7. My neighbour is always running \_\_\_\_\_ bread and borrowing some from me.

**TURN (away, down, off, out, out, over, up)**

1. We arranged to meet at the theatre but she didn't turn \_\_\_\_\_
2. The boat turned \_\_\_\_\_ and threw us all into the water.
3. She was plain as a child but she turned \_\_\_\_\_ remarkably pretty.
4. In this bok the mysterious stranger turns \_\_\_\_\_ to be the groom.
5. Turn \_\_\_\_\_ the radio if you're not listening.
6. I turned \_\_\_\_\_ (refused) the invitation because I had to leave the town.
7. He wasn't rich by any means but he never turned \_\_\_\_\_ anyone who needed help.

**CALL (at, back, in, for, off, on, up)**

1. On his way to work he called \_\_\_\_\_ the florist's and ordered a dozen roses.
2. She called \_\_\_\_\_ for a few minutes to return a book.
3. The situation is difficult and calls \_\_\_\_\_ great tact.
4. The garden party was called \_\_\_\_\_ because of the rain.
5. He was called \_\_\_\_\_ at the age of 18 and spent a year in the army.
6. Mrs. Jones rang. She wants you to call her \_\_\_\_\_
7. If you happen to come to Bucharest, do call \_\_\_\_\_ us.

**BREAK (down, into, into, off, out, out of, up)**

1. Burglars broke \_\_\_\_\_ the house and stole some jewellery.

2. War broke \_\_\_\_\_ in 1939.
3. He carried on the business alone for years before his health broke \_\_\_\_\_
4. Mary has broken \_\_\_\_\_ her engagement to Charles.
5. The family was broken \_\_\_\_\_ after the divorce of the parents.
6. He `roke \_\_\_\_\_ our conversation and reminded us it was getting late
7. The three men who broke \_\_\_\_\_ prison yesterday were later recaptured.

### **GIVE (away, away, back, in, out, out, up)**

1. He won \$100 and gave it all \_\_\_\_\_
2. Smoking is not healthy at all. I'll have to give it \_\_\_\_\_.
3. He gave \_\_\_\_\_ all the books he had borrowed.
4. You're secret is safe with me. I won't give you \_\_\_\_\_ (betray you).
5. He didn't want to go to the cinema but they begged so hard that he gave \_\_\_\_\_ and went with them.
6. The diver's supply of oxygen gave \_\_\_\_\_ and he had to be brought to the surface quickly.
7. The names of the winners were given \_\_\_\_\_ on the radio.

### **PUT (away, back, down, down, forward, off, off, on, on, up, up with)**

1. Put \_\_\_\_\_ the clock, it is twenty minutes fast.
2. This clock is always slow. I put it \_\_\_\_\_ ten minutes every morning.
3. We'll put \_\_\_\_\_ our trip to Hawaii as we don't have enough money yet. (postpone)
4. Why did you put \_\_\_\_\_ the light? It's still light in the room. Please, put it \_\_\_\_\_.
5. I wish you would put \_\_\_\_\_ all these papers and books instead of leaving them on the table.
6. I don't know how you put \_\_\_\_\_ the noise; it would drive me mad.
7. Here's your coat. Put it \_\_\_\_\_ and let's leave.
8. The shortage of eggs has put \_\_\_\_\_ their prices considerably. ,
9. The government put \_\_\_\_\_ the rebellion with great severity.
10. Please put \_\_\_\_\_ your name and your address on this subscription form.

### **MAKE (for, out, up, up, up, up for)**

1. Thank you for your help. I'll make \_\_\_\_\_ you.
2. The roads were crowded with people making - the coast.
3. She makes \_\_\_\_\_ very skilfully, with beautiful colours. She looks much younger than she is.
4. I can't make \_\_\_\_\_ what it is written here, he's got an awful handwriting.
5. It's time they made \_\_\_\_\_ this silly quarrel.
6. I don't believe your story. I'm sure you made it \_\_\_\_\_.

## **INFINITIVES**

**NOTE:** This lesson supposes an intermediate level of English, so it will not be translated. An infinitive is a verbal formed with "to" and the base form of the verb. It can be used as a noun, an adverb, or an adjective.

- Ex: To eat is a necessity. (noun)  
 I came home to change. (adverb)  
 He awlays has money to spend. (adjective)

### **FORM**

Long infinitive: **to go**                      Negative form:            **not to go**

Short infinitive: **go**

	Active Voice	Passive Voice	
Present	to write	to be writing	to be written
Perfect	to have written	to have been writing to have been written	

## USES

### VERBS + INFINITIVE

afford	Demand	mean	strive
agree	Deserve	need	swear
appear	desire	offer	threaten
arrange	expect	plan	lend
ask	fail	prepare	try
attempt	forget	pretend	volunteer
beg	hesitate	promise	wait
care	hope	refuse	want
claim	intend	regret	wish
consent	learn	seem	
decide	manage	struggle	

Ex.: He agreed to help us.

She can't afford to buy the car.

I hope to do the job quickly.

**Note:** An Accusative may be inserted in some cases:

Ex: He asked me to do this.

We consider him to be a reliable person.

I want them to learn English.

ADJECTIVES	+ INFINITIVE		
anxious	difficult	hard	ready
boring	eager	pleased	strange
common	easy	prepared	usual
dangerous	good		

Ex.: They are prepared to take the exam.

It is usual to bow when greeting Japanese.

It is dangerous (for him) to climb that mountain.

Note: TOO + Adj/Adv + To-Infinitive

Ex.: She is too young to travel alone.

The book is too heavy for me to lift.

Adj/Adv + ENOUGH + To-Infinitive

Ex.: She is old enough to understand.

The problem was easy enough for me to solve.

The first/second/last/only/best (and other superlative adj.) + Noun/pronoun ONE + To-infinitive

Ex.: He was the only one to give a correct answer.

\* VERBS + NOUN/PRONOUN +

advise

dare

invite

teach

allow	encourage	need	tell
ask	expect	order	urge
beg	forbid	permit	want
cause	force	persuade	warn
challenge	hire	remind	
convince	instruct	require	

Ex.: He told me to wait for him.

I reminded her to buy the book.

We expect him to pass that exam.

NOTE: The verb in the infinitive may be related to the preceding noun/pronoun.

Ex: There is a lot of work to do.

I've got a few people to see.

### \* INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS AFTER PASSIVE VERBS

When - the subject is general (people, they) and

- the verb is a mental one (acknowledge, assume, believe, claim, consider, estimate, expect, feel, find, know, presume, report, say, think, understand etc.)

there are two possible passive forms.

Ex People say that he is a good painter. = It is said that he is a good painter. (1)

As he is the subject discussed about by people and he is the good painter, he is moved in the front position

It is said that he is a good painter.

He is said to be a good painter. (2)

Thus, we can have:

Ex People know you lied.

(1) It is known you lied

or (2) You are known to have lied.

Ex People expect that the strike will begin today.

(1) It is expected that the strike will begin today

or (2) The strike is expected to begin today.

Ex: They believe that the killer is now living in Ohio.

(1) It is believed that the killer is living in Ohio.

or (2) The killer is believed to be living in Ohio.

### USES OF SHORT INFINITIVE

- **AFTER MODALS AND AUXILIARIES do/did**

Ex: You must come.

They may arrive soon.

Did you pass the exam?

- **AFTER let's, make + noun/pronoun, help, would rather, had better, why not ...?**

Ex: Let's go out tonight.

He made me laugh with his jokes.

Can you help (to) open this box?

I'd rather not go there now.

You'd better finish your homework now and play chess later.

Why out phone me tomorrow?

### **AFTER VERBS OF PERCEPTION (see, watch, notice, feel, hear) + OBJECT**

Ex: I didn't hear you come in.

After verbs of perception there may be used an -ING form too (see next lesson)

## **GERUNDS**

### **FORM**

A gerund is formed by adding -ing to the base form of the verb.

Present **writing**

Past **having written**

### **USES**

#### **AS VERBAL NOUNS**

Ex.: Swimming is healthy for you. (subject)

You should try studying more. (object) He was suspected of cheating. (object the preposition)

#### **VERBS + GERUND**

admit	deny	postpone	resist
advise	discuss	practice	resume
anticipate	enjoy	quit	risk
appreciate	finish	recall	suggest
avoid	keep	recommend	tolerate
can't help	mention	regret	try
consider	mind	report	understand
delay	miss	resent	

Ex: We appreciated his giving us the car. I finished writing the report.

She enjoys playing tennis on weekends.

#### **EXPRESSIONS/PHRASAL VERBS + GERUND**

aid in	count on	look forward to	think about	
approve of	depend on	object to		think
of				
be better off	give up	put off	worry about	
call for	insist on	rely on		
confess to	keep on	succeed in		

Ex.: You can count on his being there - I keep on forgetting her name.

Sam confessed to eating all the cookies.

#### **ADJECTIVES + PREPOSITIONS + GERUND**

accustomed to	capable of	intent on	successful in
afraid of	fond of	interested in	tired of

Ex: Sue is accustomed to working long hours. Edward is interested in becoming an artist. I am afraid of catching another cold.

### NOUNS + PREPOSITION + GERUND

choice of  
excuse for  
intention of

method of/for  
possibility of  
reason for

Ex: I have no intention of driving fast.

She had a good excuse for arriving late. There is a possibility of going there.

### INFINITIVES OR GERUNDS ?

Some verbs can be followed by either an infinitive or gerund. In some cases there is a difference in meaning, in some others there is not.

#### NO DIFFERENCE IN MEANING

start            begin            continue            can't stand

Ex. I started to wash the dishes.

I started washing the dishes.

#### WITH DIFFERENCE IN MEANING

be	My favourite watersport is swimming	(describes an activity)
	Our plan is to swim every week-end	(describes a complete event, often future one)
stop	He stopped smoking.	(he no longer smokes)
	He stopped to smoke.	(he quit something in order to smoke)
go on	We went on talking all night.	(continue doing the same thing)
	After an unsuccessful first year at university, he went on to get a first-class degree.	(move to something different)
remember	He remembered saying that word.	(past)
	Remember to post the letter.	(present or future)
forget	He forgot locking the door.	(past)
	He forgets to lock the door.	(present or future)
regret	I regret telling him the truth.	(past)
	We regret to inform you that you will be laid off.	(present or future)
try	Please, try to open this box.	(try with difficulty or without success)
	Try hitting it with a hammer, that might work.	(try a method)
need	The car needs cleaning.	(passive meaning: someone needs to clean the car, it doesn't matter who does it)
	I need to get up early tomorrow.	(necessity)

see, hear	I saw him crossing the road	(action in progress)
	I saw him cross the road.	(complete act)
love, like	I hate telling lies.	(generally)
prefer, hate	I hate to tell you this.	(particular occasion)

## INFINITIVES AND GERUNDS - EXERCISES

### INTERMEDIATE

#### 1. Put the verb into the correct form: INFINITIVE Or GERUND:

Examples: 1. He has promised to deliver (deliver) it to me this afternoon.

2. I've invited Mark and Anna ..... (stay) for the week-end.
3. I don't mind ..... (stay) at home to look after the children.
4. Has she decided ..... (take) the job?
5. He's always complaining about ..... (work) too hard.
6. He claims ..... (be) her brother but I think he's lying.
7. Why are you blaming me for ..... (get) lost? You've got the map.
8. We don't believe in ..... (buy) each other big presents.
9. I know you don't approve of ..... (smoke) so I won't smoke in here.
10. The doctor advised me ..... (stay) in bed but it's just boring.
11. Don't keep on ..... (talk) about it. It's upsetting me.
12. It's raining outside. Would you prefer ..... (stay in)?
13. My boss told me ..... (not leave) the office before five.
14. It's very nice here but I miss ..... (see) my friends.
15. I don't recommend ..... (study) on your own.
16. I've always dreamt of ..... (live) in a cottage in the country.
17. Sometimes I think you enjoy ..... (laugh) at everybody.
18. I regret ..... (not keep) in touch with my old school friends.
19. I don't expect him ..... (phone) me tonight but I hope he does.
20. Don't forget ..... (lock up) when you go to bed.

### ADVANCED

#### 2. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct forms. Note that sometimes a bare infinitive will be required:

1. She remembers part of her childhood quite clearly. She remembers ..... (go) to school for the first time and ..... (be) frightened.
2. Did you remember ..... (lock) the car? No I didn't. I'd better ..... (go) back and ..... (do) it now.
3. He said "I'm terribly sorry ..... (keep) You ..... (wait)."  
I said "It doesn't matter at all", but he went on ..... (apologize) for nearly five minutes!
4. The lecturer began by ..... (tell) us where the island was and went on ..... (talk) about its history.
5. Tom: 'I can't get my car ..... (start) on cold mornings'  
Jack: "Have you tried ..... (fill) the radiator with hot water? That sometimes helps.
6. Bill: 'Don't forget ..... (take) that money with you.'
7. Peter: 'Wouldn't it be better. .... (ask) Tom ..... (leave) his camera at home?'
- Jack: "It would be no good ..... (ask) Tom ..... (do) that. It would be like (ask) a woman ..... (travel) without a handbag."
8. We stopped once ..... (buy) petrol and then we stopped again ..... (ask) someone the way.



I'd better you told me everything. I'd better you had told me everything

- in conditional clauses, after: if, suppose, supposing, if only  
Ex: If I were you, I would buy it. If I had been you, I would have bought it.  
Supposing you were older, what would you do? Supposing you had had the money, would you have helped him?
- in adverbial clauses of comparison, after as if  
Ex.: You treat me as if I were a child. She behaved as if she had already won the game.
- in concessive clauses, after even though, even if  
Ex I won't buy this car even if they offered it to me. I wouldn't have come to the party, even If Mike had been there.

## 2. ANALYTICAL SUBJUNCTIVE a) Should + Infinitive

It expresses doubt, request, purpose, assumption, concession, necessity, etc. It is required by:

- **verbs like: insist, suggest, request, order, recommend, propose, think,** etc.  
Ex.: Fred suggested we should finish work first and then go out.
- **adjectives: advisable, essential, desirable, preferable,** etc.  
Ex.: It is advisable that you should take these pills.
- **nouns: decision, demand, requirement, condition**  
Ex: The committee decision was that we should meet once a week from now on.
- **impersonal phrases like: it is necessary/essential/possible/ out of question/likely/a shame/ strange/fortunate/odd/a pity** etc  
Ex.. It 's necessary that they should be here on time.
- purpose clauses introduced by **in order that, so that, lest (in case), for fear** Ex.: They took a cab in order that they should not miss the train

### b) Modals + Infinitive

May/Might or Can/Could + Infinitive occur.

- in main clauses conveying a wish Ex.: May all your dreams come true!  
Could she become an actress!
- in subordinate clauses expressing hope or fear  
Ex: I hope he may make it out.  
They were afraid she could fail the test.
- In purpose clauses  
Ex.: He did this so that you may find out the truth.  
I'll help you so that you can pass the exam.
- in concession clauses  
Ex: Whatever she may say, don't believe her.  
He could be only four, but he is already playing the piano.
- in adverbial clauses of comparison  
Ex.: She talks as if she may be the boss here.  
She talks as if she could do something about it.

Will/Would + Infinitive may be used in purpose clauses.

Ex.: They are climbing higher so that they will get a better view.

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE - EXERCISES

### ADVANCED

#### 1. Supply a suitable tense of the verbs in brackets:

1. I wish I ..... (know) his name.
2. It's time we all ..... (go) home.
3. I'd rather you ..... (not leave) now.
4. Suppose I ..... (get) there late.
5. He acts as if he ..... (know) English perfectly.
6. If only he ..... (not eat) so much garlic!
7. I wish I ..... (not break) it. Now it's too late.
8. He came in looking as if he ..... .. (see) a ghost.
9. If only I ..... (know) that earlier, I'd have helped you a l 10. I felt as if I ..... (be) pulled through a hedge backwards.

#### 2. Rephrase the following sentences so that the meaning stays the same:

1. Unfortunately I have to leave tonight'  
I wish .....
2. Jack doesn't know all the people in the room, although he pretends to.  
Jack acts .....
- 3 I'm sorry they don't visit me anymore.  
I wish .....
4. With more help I could have solved the problem.  
If only I .....
5. Ann doesn't want to be a translator, but a teacher.  
She'd rather .....
6. He started explaining the problem to everybody although he didn't understand it.  
He started explaining the problem as if .....

#### 3. Translate into English:

1. Întâmplă-se ce s-o întâmpla.
2. Doamne ferește!
3. Departe de mine gândul să-i fac rău ei.
4. Este de necrezut că este încă fericit după toate acestea.
5. Nu ți se pare normal ca el să caute cel mai bun jucător?
6. Propun ca această ședință să fie ținută la ora cinci.
7. Dacă el e găsit vinovat, atunci toți o să-i evite.
8. Chiar dacă el ar veni să-și ceară iertare, știu că John nu poate să treacă peste purtarea lui.
9. Aș prefera să-mi spui adevărul.
10. Numai de-ar veni mai repede.
11. As vrea sa fi fost in locul tau ieri.
12. Vorbea de parcă nu știa ce spune.
- 13 Mințea de frică să nu fie tras la răspundere pentru aceasta.

# Annexes

## Nature and Ecology

<b>Endangered Nature</b>	<b>Natura în pericol</b>
wild animals big cats game big game a lion a tiger a monkey an ape a gorilla	animalele sălbatice felinele mari vânatul vânatul mare un leu un tigru o maimuță o primată o gorilă
a rhinoceros, a rhino a horn an elephant the tusks ivory	un rinocer un corn un elefant colții fildeș
sea mammals a whale a dolphin a seal fur	mamiferele marine o balenă un delfin o focă blană
fish, fishes a shark a fin exotic fish deep-sea fish rare species shellfish a shell	pește, pești, specii de pește un rechin o aripioară peștii exotici pești de apă adâncă specii rare moluște o cochilie
<b>Threats</b>	<b>Pericole</b>
fishing a fisherman angling an angler industrial fishing a net a harpoon explosives hunting, shooting a hunter, huntsman an ivory-hunter big game hunting a big game hunter a safari a rifle a collector a trophy traffic, trafficking smuggling a smuggler poaching a poacher	pescuitul un pescar pescuitul cu undița un pescar cu undița pescuitul industrial o plasă un harpon explozibili vânătoarea un vânător un vânător de elefanți vânătoarea animalelor mari vânător de animale mari un safari o pușcă un colecționar un trofeu traficul contrabanda un contrabandist braconajul un braconier
fish go fishing angle hunt drive away, frighten away	a pescui a merge la pescuit a pescui cu undița a vâna a vâna (a urmări, a fugări)

go hunting catch collect	a merge la vânătoare a prinde a colecționa
traffic smuggle poach massacre, slaughter threaten, endanger shoot (at) harm dwindle disappear, become extinct	a trafica, a face trafic a face contrabandă a bracona a masacra a amenința a împușca (a trage asupra) a face rău, a răni a reduce a dispărea
harmful cruel irresponsible disappearing, endangered captive helpless, defenceless	nociv, vătămător crud iresponsabil în curs de dispariție captiv lipsit de apărare
<b>Endangered Flora</b>	<b>Flora în pericol</b>
the ecosystem the environment ecological imbalance ecological balance the forest the Amazonian forest the Amazon the rain forest a tree a root a branch a wood wood precious wood ebony mahogany firewood fuel deforestation a sawmill the paper industry land-clearing a flower a plant medicinal plants	ecosistemul mediul dezechilibru ecologic echilibru ecologic pădurea pădurea amazoniană Amazonul pădurea tropicală un arbore o rădăcină o ramură o pădure lemn lemn de esențe prețioase abanos mahon lemne de foc combustibil despădurire un gater, un joagăr industria hârtiei defrișarea terenului o floare o plantă plante medicinale
fell, chop down (a tree) log deforest burn build (roads) pick wither jeopardize be in jeopardy become scarce	a tăia (un copac) a doborî copaci a despăduri a arde a construe (drumuri) a culege a se veșteji a pune în pericol, a primejdui a fi în pericol a se rarefia
woody wooden scattered scarce	lemn, împădurit de lemn răsfirat rar
<b>Endangered Earth</b>	<b>Planeta în pericol</b>
exploitation, exploiting depletion	exploatarea diminuarea, sărăcirea

devastation soil erosion the ozone layer acid rain global warming the greenhouse effect greenhouse gases an environmental disaster	devastarea eroziunea solului stratul de ozon ploaia acidă încălzirea globală efectul de seră gazele care produc efectul de seră un dezastru ecologic
exploit, tap impoverish exhaust, deplete dig contaminate waste, squander damage destroy devastate, wreak havoc	a exploata a sărăci a se epuiza a săpa a contamina a irosi a deteriora a distruge a devasta
<b>Air pollution</b>	<b>Poluarea aerului</b>
a polluter an emission carbon dioxide exhaust fumes road traffic  an exhaust pipe industrial smoke/fumes industrial facilities CFCs an aerosol smoke fog smog asbestos lead lead-poisoning an allergy poisoning breathing difficulties asthma	un factor de poluare o emisie dioxid de carbon gaze de eșapament circulația automobilelor, traficul o țevă de eșapament fum industrial instalații industriale freoni un aerosol fumul ceața ceața poluantă azbestul plumbul otrăvirea cu plumb o alergie o intoxicație dificultăți de respirație astm
release, let out smoke pollute breathe in, inhale choke fight for breath, gasp for breath	a elibera, a degaja fum a polua a inspira, a inhala a se asfixia a respire cu greutate
dusty toxic noxious stifling unbreathable carcinogenic, cancer-causing unwholesome	prăfos toxic nociv sufocant irespirabil cancerigen nesănătos
<b>Climate Changes</b>	<b>Schimbările climatice</b>
drought the desert desertification ground water the ground water level a flood a tidal wave dry up, dry out flood	seceta deșertul deșertificarea apa freatică nivelul apei freatice a inundație un val de flux a se usca a inunda

dry barren hungry, starved, starving	uscat deșertic, arid, steril înfometat
<b>Scarcity and Supply</b>	<b>Penuria și excedentul</b>
shortage, scarcity lack want, need famine, starvation plenty, abundance glut misuse mismanagement be short of run short of lack (sth), want (for sth) need starve, die of hunger be packed with, overflow with misuse mismanage	penuria lipsa lipsa, necesitatea foametea abundența excesul greșita utilizare gestiunea greșită a fi penurie de a începe să lipsească a duce lipsă de a avea nevoie de a muri de foame a deborda de a utilize greșit a gestiona greșit
<b>Water Pollution</b>	<b>Poluarea apei</b>
sewage a sewer polluted water pollutants an oil slick get rid of dump, discharge spill	apele uzate un canal collector ape poluate (agenți) poluanți o pată de petrol, o mare neagră a scăpa de a deversa a deversa, a se răspândi
<b>Waste</b>	<b>Deșeurile</b>
household waste industrial waste hazardous waste chemical waste radioactive waste rubbish, refuse a rubbish bin a dump, a tip junk  disposable products scrap a scrap heap a surplus dispose of junk (coll.), scrap discard waste smell foul stink pile up ooze leak poison contaminate  disposable dirty hazardous smelly, foul-smelling poisonous	deșeuri menajere deșeuri industriale deșeuri periculoase deșeuri chimice deșeuri radioactive rămășițe, deșeuri o pubelă o grămadă de gunoi vechituri, obiecte bune de aruncat produse care pot fi aruncate fier vechi o grămadă de fiare vechi un excedent a se debarasa de a arunca la fiare vechi a arunca a irosi a mirosi urât a duhni a (se) aglomera a se infiltra a se scurge, a scăpa a intoxica, a otrăvi a contamina  debarasabil murder periculos urât mirositor otrăvitor stânjenitor

cumbersome, bulky	
<b>Environmental Progress</b>	<b>Progresul ecologiei</b>
<p>preservation  protection, conservation  recycling  sorting out  the bottle bank</p> <p>a green product</p> <p>reuse  recycle  sort (out)  collect (used glass)  be aware of  become aware of</p> <p>reusable  recyclable  returnable  harmless  wholesome  ozone-friendly  environmentally-friendly  eco-friendly  environmentally-minded  ecologically-minded</p>	<p>păstrarea  protecția, conservarea  reciclarea  trierea  coș de gunoi pentru sticlă uzată  un produs ecologic</p> <p>a reutiliza  a recicla  a realiza trierea  a colecta (sticlă utilizată)  a fi conștient de  a deveni conștient de</p> <p>reutilizabil  reciclabil  returnabil  inofensiv  sănătos, bun pentru sănătate  inofensiv pentru ozon  inofensiv pentru mediu</p> <p>conștient de implicațiile de natură ecologică</p>
<b>Activism</b>	<b>Militantism</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ecology</li> <li>• an ecologist</li> <li>• environmentalism</li> <li>• an environmentalist,  a conservationist  an environmental lawyer</li> </ul> <p>an activist  the Greens  a Green party  a Green lobby  commitment  involvement  a campaign  an awareness campaign  boycott  lobbying  a suit, a lawsuit</p> <p>commit oneself  be involved in  watch  make the public aware, sensitize  campaign (against)  denounce  reveal, expose  fight (against sth)  oppose  boycott  complain  lodge a complaint  sue  bring a lawsuit against</p>	<p>ecologia  un ecologist  ecologia  un ecologist</p> <p>un avocat specializat pe probleme ecologice  un activist, un militant  verzii  un partid ecologist  un grup de presiune ecologist  angajamentul  participarea  o campanie  o campanie de sensibilizare  boicot  activitatea grupurilor de presiune  un process, o urmărire judiciară</p> <p>a se angaja  a participa la, a se implica în  a supraveghea  a sensibiliza (publicul)  a face campanie (contra)  a denunța  a revela, a denunța  a lupta (împotriva a ceva)  a se opune (la ceva)  a boicota  a se plânge de  a înainta o plângere  a ataca în justiție  a intenta un proces împotriva</p>

militant environmental provocative virulent	militant ecologic provocator virulent
<b>Government Action</b>	<b>Acțiunea Guvernamentală</b>
a bill a law, an act a green law an incentive a game reserve, a game park a nature reserve a gamekeeper, a game-warden a bird sanctuary a protected species energy-saving measures untapped resources rubbish-collecting garbage-collecting public transport car-pooling  alternate traffic a tax, a duty a fine a sanction, a penalty  pass a law enact implement enforce promote regulate control, check guarantee fine abide by the law	un proiect de lege o lege o lege în favoarea mediului o măsură de încurajare o rezervație de animale o rezervație naturală un pădurar o rezervație de păsări o specie protejată măsuri de economisire a energiei resurse neexplorate colectarea deșeurilor  transportul public folosirea în comun a unor mașini (pentru economie) circulația alternativă o taxă o amendă o sancțiune  a vota o lege a promulga a implementa a aplica; a obliga, a constrânge a promova a reglementa a controla, a verifica a garanta a condamna la plata unei amenzi a respecta legea
<b>Technical Innovations</b>	<b>Inovații tehnice</b>
energy efficiency clean energy wind power solar energy a sewage treatment plant waste disposal a catalytic converter lead-free / unleaded petrol an electric car  protect renew save convert drain clean up decontaminate process (sewage) manage (waste)  biological natural clean	economie de energie energie nepoluantă energie eoliană energie solară o stație de epurare tratarea deșeurilor un convertor catalitic benzină fără plumb mașină electrică  a proteja a reînnoi a economisi a converti a drena a curăța a decontamina a prelucra/trata (deșeurile) a gestiona/trata (deșeurile)  biologic natural curat, nepoluant

ecological	ecologic
innovative	inovator
solar-powered	care funcționează pe bază de energie solară
wind-powered	care funcționează pe bază de energie eoliană
renewable	inepuizabil
energy-efficient	economic din punctul de vedere al energiei consumate
fuel-efficient	cu economie de carburant
pollutant-free	fără agent poluant
phosphate-free	fără fosfați
smoke-free	fără fum
lead-free, unleaded	fără plumb

### Company Structure

1	<b>Accounts Dept.</b>	<i>n.</i> department responsible for administering a company's financial affairs
2	<b>A.G.M.</b> <sup>UK</sup>	<i>abbr.</i> Annual General Meeting of a company's shareholders
3	<b>board of directors</b>	<i>n.</i> group of people chosen to establish policy for and control a company
4	<b>chairman</b> <sup>UK</sup>	<i>n.</i> person who heads a Board of Directors; head of a company; chairperson
5	<b>director</b>	<i>n.</i> a member of the board of directors
6	<b>executive officer</b> <sup>US</sup>	<i>n.</i> person managing the affairs of a corporation - <b>chief executive officer</b> <i>n.</i>
7	<b>headquarters</b>	<i>n.</i> a company's principal or main office or centre of control
8	<b>manager</b>	<i>n.</i> person responsible for day-to-day running of a dept.; executive officer <sup>US</sup>
9	<b>managing director</b> <sup>UK</sup>	<i>n.</i> senior director after the chairman responsible for day-to-day direction
10	<b>Marketing Dept.</b>	<i>n.</i> department that puts goods on market, inc. packaging, advertising etc
11	<b>organisation chart</b>	<i>n.</i> a table or plan showing a company's structure graphically
12	<b>Personnel Dept.</b>	<i>n.</i> department responsible for recruitment and welfare of staff or employees
13	<b>president</b> <sup>US</sup>	<i>n.</i> the highest executive officer of a company; head of a company
14	<b>Production Dept.</b>	<i>n.</i> department responsible for physical creation of product
15	<b>Purchasing Dept.</b>	<i>n.</i> department responsible for finding and buying everything for a company
16	<b>R &amp; D Department</b>	<i>n.</i> department responsible for Research and Development of (new) products
17	<b>reception</b>	<i>n.</i> the place where visitors and clients report on arrival at a company
18	<b>Sales Department</b>	<i>n.</i> department responsible for finding customers and making sales
19	<b>shareholder</b>	<i>n.</i> person who holds or owns shares in or a part of a company or corporation
20	<b>vice president</b> <sup>US</sup>	<i>n.</i> any of several executive officers, each responsible for a separate division

### Employment

1	<b>bonus</b>	<i>n.</i> additional pay given to employee as incentive or reward
2	<b>curriculum vitae</b> <sup>UK</sup>	<i>n.</i> short account of one's education, career etc; CV <sup>UK</sup> ; résumé <sup>US</sup> ; resume <sup>US</sup>
3	<b>dismiss</b>	<i>v.</i> to remove or discharge from employment; to sack [colloq.]; to fire <sup>US</sup>
4	<b>employer</b>	<i>n.</i> person or firm who employs people - <b>employee</b> <i>n.</i> person employed
5	<b>fire</b> <sup>US</sup>	<i>v.</i> [colloq.] to dismiss
6	<b>interview</b>	<i>v.</i> an oral examination of an applicant for a job - <i>also v.</i>
7	<b>make redundant</b> <sup>UK</sup>	<i>v.</i> [made, made] to dismiss because of not being needed - <b>redundancy</b> <sup>UK</sup> <i>n.</i>
8	<b>maternity leave</b>	<i>n.</i> period of absence from work (for a woman) when having a baby
9	<b>notice</b>	<i>n.</i> advance warning of intention to resign - <b>to give or tender one's notice</b> <i>v.</i>
10	<b>perk</b>	<i>abbr.</i> perquisite; something additional to regular salary [eg: free meals; a car]
11	<b>personnel</b>	<i>n.</i> the people who work for a firm
12	<b>personnel officer</b>	<i>n.</i> manager responsible for recruitment, training and welfare of personnel
13	<b>promotion</b>	<i>n.</i> advancement in rank or position - <b>to promote</b> <i>v.</i>
14	<b>prospects</b>	<i>n.</i> opportunity for success, promotion etc
15	<b>recruit</b>	<i>n.</i> to look for and employ personnel - <b>recruitment</b> <i>n.</i>
16	<b>resign</b>	<i>v.</i> to give up a job - <b>letter of resignation</b> <i>n.</i>
17	<b>retire</b>	<i>v.</i> to leave employment, esp. because of age - <b>retirement</b> <i>n.</i>
18	<b>salary</b>	<i>n.</i> a fixed, regular payment, usually monthly, made by employer to employee
19	<b>staff</b>	<i>n.</i> the people who work for a firm or a particular department; employees

20	<b>take on</b>	<i>v.</i> [took, taken] to employ; to hire
----	----------------	--

### British and American Financial Terms

Here are some of the main differences between British and American financial terminology.

British	American
Annual General Meeting (AGM)	Annual Stockholders Meeting
Articles of Association	Bylaws
authorised share capital	authorized capital stock
barometer stock	bellwether stock
base rate	prime rate
bonus <i>or</i> capitalisation issue	stock dividend <i>or</i> stock split
bridging loan	bridge loan
building society	savings and loan association
cheque	check
company	corporation
creditors	accounts payable
current account	checking account
debtors	accounts receivable
gilt-edged stock (gilts)	Treasury bonds
labour	labor
Memorandum of Association	Certificate of Incorporation
merchant bank	investment bank
ordinary share	common stock
overheads	overhead
profit and loss account	income statement
property	real estate
quoted company	listed company
retail price index (RPI)	consumer price index (CPI)
share	stock
share premium	paid-in surplus
shareholder	stockholder
shareholders' equity	stockholders' equity
stock	inventory
trade union	labor union
unit trusts	mutual funds
visible trade	merchandise trade

### Selling

1	<b>after-sales service</b>	<i>n.</i> service that continues after a product has been sold [eg: repairs etc]
2	<b>buyer</b>	<i>n.</i> <b>1</b> any person who buys anything <b>2</b> a person employed by a firm to buy
3	<b>client</b>	<i>n.</i> a person who buys services from a lawyer, architect or other professionals
4	<b>close</b>	<i>v.</i> to finalise a deal or sale; to make a sale
5	<b>cold call</b>	<i>v.</i> to telephone a prospect without previous contact - <i>also n.</i>
6	<b>customer</b>	<i>n.</i> a person who buys goods or services from a shop or business
7	<b>deal</b>	<i>n.</i> a business transaction - <i>also v.</i> <b>dealer n.</b>
8	<b>discount</b>	<i>n.</i> a reduction in the price; a deduction [usually expressed as a percentage (%)]
9	<b>follow up</b>	<i>v.</i> to continue to follow persistently; to maintain contact [eg: after a lead]
10	<b>guarantee</b>	<i>n.</i> a promise that a product will be repaired or replaced etc if faulty - <i>also v.</i>
11	<b>in bulk</b>	in large quantity, usually at a lower price
12	<b>lead</b>	<i>n.</i> useful indication of a possible customer to be followed up
13	<b>objection</b>	<i>n.</i> a reason given by a prospect for not buying - <b>to object v.</b> <i>see</i> overcome
14	<b>overcome</b>	<i>v.</i> [-came, -come] <b>to overcome an obj-ection</b> to show an objection is invalid
15	<b>product</b>	<i>n.</i> something made and usually for sale - <b>to produce v.</b> <i>see</i> service
16	<b>prospect</b>	<i>n.</i> a possible or probable customer; prospective customer
17	<b>representative</b>	<i>n.</i> <b>sales representative</b> person who represents & sells for a firm; salesperson
18	<b>retail</b>	<i>v.</i> to sell in small quantities (as in a shop to the public) - <i>also n.</i> <i>see</i> wholesale
19	<b>service</b>	<i>n.</i> work done usually in return for payment - <b>to serve v.</b> <i>see</i> product

20	<b>wholesale</b>	<i>v.</i> to sell in bulk (as to a shop for resale to the public) - <i>also n.</i> see retail
----	------------------	---

### Money

1	<b>A.T.M.</b>	<i>abbr.</i> Automated Teller Machine; cash dispenser (UK)
2	<b>banknote</b>	<i>n.</i> a piece of paper money; bill <sup>US</sup>
3	<b>bill<sup>US</sup></b>	<i>n.</i> a banknote; a piece of paper money
4	<b>black market</b>	<i>n.</i> illegal traffic in officially controlled commodities such as foreign currency
5	<b>bureau de change</b>	<i>n.</i> establishment where currencies of different countries may be exchanged
6	<b>cash</b>	<i>n.</i> 1 coins or bank notes (not cheques); 2 actual money paid (not credit)
7	<b>cash dispenser<sup>UK</sup></b>	<i>n.</i> automatic machine from which clients of a bank may withdraw money; ATM
8	<b>cashier</b>	<i>n.</i> person dealing with cash transactions in a bank, store etc
9	<b>coin</b>	<i>n.</i> a piece of metal money
10	<b>currency</b>	<i>n.</i> the money in general use or circulation in any country
11	<b>debt</b>	<i>n.</i> money etc owed by one person to another
12	<b>exchange rate</b>	<i>n.</i> the rate at which one currency can be exchanged for another
13	<b>foreign exchange</b>	<i>n.</i> the currency of other countries
14	<b>hard currency</b>	<i>n.</i> currency that will probably not fall in value and is readily accepted
15	<b>invest</b>	<i>v.</i> to put money for profit into business, land etc - <b>investment n.</b>
16	<b>legal tender</b>	<i>n.</i> currency that cannot legally be refused in payment of a debt
17	<b>petty cash<sup>UK</sup></b>	<i>n.</i> a cash fund for small, everyday expenses
18	<b>soft currency</b>	<i>n.</i> currency that will probably fall in value and is not readily accepted
19	<b>speculate</b>	<i>v.</i> (risky) buying of foreign currency, land etc for rapid gain - <b>speculation n.</b>
20	<b>transaction</b>	<i>n.</i> a (usually commercial) exchange; a deal - <b>to transact v.</b>

### Banking

1	<b>balance</b>	<i>n.</i> the difference between credits and debits in an account
2	<b>bank charges</b>	<i>n.</i> money paid to a bank for the bank's services etc
3	<b>branch</b>	<i>n.</i> local office or bureau of a bank
4	<b>checkbook<sup>US</sup></b>	<i>n.</i> book containing detachable checks; chequebook <sup>UK</sup>
5	<b>check<sup>US</sup></b>	<i>n.</i> written order to a bank to pay the stated sum from one's account; cheque <sup>UK</sup>
6	<b>credit</b>	<i>n.</i> money in a bank a/c; sum added to a bank a/c; money lent by a bank - <i>also v.</i>
7	<b>credit card</b>	<i>n.</i> (plastic) card from a bank authorising the purchasing of goods on credit
8	<b>current account</b>	<i>n.</i> bank a/c from which money may be drawn at any time; checking account <sup>US</sup>
9	<b>debit</b>	<i>n.</i> a sum deducted from a bank account, as for a cheque - <i>also v.</i>
10	<b>deposit account</b>	<i>n.</i> bank a/c on which interest is paid; savings account <sup>US</sup>
11	<b>fill in<sup>UK</sup></b>	<i>v.</i> to add written information to a document to make it complete; to fill out <sup>US</sup>
12	<b>interest</b>	<i>n.</i> money paid for the use of money lent - <b>interest rate n.</b>
13	<b>loan</b>	<i>n.</i> money lent by a bank etc and that must be repaid with interest - <i>also v.</i>
14	<b>overdraft</b>	<i>n.</i> deficit in a bank account caused by withdrawing more money than is paid in
15	<b>pay in</b>	<i>v.</i> [ <b>paid, paid</b> ] to deposit or put money in to a bank account
16	<b>payee</b>	<i>n.</i> person to whom money is paid
17	<b>paying-in slip</b>	<i>n.</i> small document recording money that you pay in to a bank account
18	<b>standing order</b>	<i>n.</i> an instruction to a bank to make regular payments
19	<b>statement</b>	<i>n.</i> a record of transactions in a bank account
20	<b>withdraw</b>	<i>v.</i> [ <b>-drew, -drawn</b> ] to take money out of a bank account - <b>withdrawal n.</b>

### Import-Export

1	<b>bill of lading</b>	<i>n.</i> list of goods and shipping instructions; waybill
2	<b>c.&amp;f.</b>	<i>abbr.</i> cost & freight: includes shipping to named port but not insurance
3	<b>c.i.f.</b>	<i>abbr.</i> cost, insurance & freight: includes insurance and shipping to named port
4	<b>cargo</b>	<i>n.</i> goods or products that are being transported or shipped
5	<b>certificate of origin</b>	<i>n.</i> a document that shows where goods come from
6	<b>container</b>	<i>n.</i> huge box to hold goods for transport - <b>container port n. to containerise v.</b>
7	<b>customs</b>	<i>n.</i> 1 government tax or duty on imported goods 2 officials who collect this tax
8	<b>declare</b>	<i>v.</i> to make a statement of taxable goods - <b>customs declaration form n.</b>
9	<b>f.a.s.</b>	<i>abbr.</i> free alongside ship [includes delivery to quayside but not loading]
10	<b>f.o.b.</b>	<i>abbr.</i> free on board: includes loading onto ship
11	<b>freight</b>	<i>n.</i> goods being transported; cargo
12	<b>irrevocable</b>	<i>adj.</i> that cannot be undone; unalterable - <b>irrevocable letter of credit n.</b>
13	<b>letter of credit</b>	<i>n.</i> a letter from a bank authorising a person to draw money from another bank

14	<b>merchandise</b>	<i>n.</i> things bought and sold; commodities; wares - also <i>v.</i>
15	<b>packing list</b>	<i>n.</i> a document that is sent with goods to show that they have been checked
16	<b>pro forma invoice</b>	<i>n.</i> an invoice or request for payment sent in advance of goods supplied
17	<b>quay</b>	<i>n.</i> a solid, artificial landing place for (un)loading ships; wharf - <b>quayside</b> <i>n.</i>
18	<b>ship</b>	<i>v.</i> to send or transport by land, sea or air - also <i>n.</i> <b>shipment</b> <i>n.</i>
19	<b>shipping agent</b>	<i>n.</i> a person acting for or representing a ship or ships at a port
20	<b>waybill</b>	<i>n.</i> list of goods and shipping instructions; bill of lading - <b>air waybill</b> <i>n.</i>

### Insurance

1	<b>actuary</b>	<i>n.</i> a person who calculates risks for insurance companies
2	<b>assessor</b>	<i>n.</i> a person who calculates the value of something [eg: a building, car etc]
3	<b>claim</b>	<i>n.</i> an application for payment under an insurance policy - <b>to make a claim</b> <i>v.</i>
4	<b>comprehensive</b>	<i>n.</i> [of an insurance policy] all-inclusive; providing complete protection
5	<b>consequential loss</b>	<i>n.</i> a loss that happens as a consequence of or as a result of another
6	<b>cover</b> <sup>UK</sup>	<i>n.</i> the protection given by an insurance policy [eg: public liability cover]
7	<b>employer's liability</b>	<i>n.</i> liability or responsibility of a firm for damage caused to one of its employees
8	<b>goods in transit</b>	<i>n.</i> property, merchandise or any goods in the process of being transported
9	<b>insurance broker</b>	<i>n.</i> agent who arranges insurance; middleman between insurer & policyholder
10	<b>liability</b>	<i>n.</i> 1 the state of being liable 2 anything for which a person is liable
11	<b>liable</b>	<i>adj.</i> legally obliged to pay for damage, injury etc; responsible - <b>liability</b> <i>n.</i>
12	<b>loss</b>	<i>n.</i> death, injury, damage etc that is the basis for a claim - <b>to lose</b> <i>v.</i>
13	<b>loss adjuster</b>	<i>n.</i> a person who assesses the amount of compensation arising from a claim
14	<b>policy</b>	<i>n.</i> a contract of insurance [eg: a product liability policy]
15	<b>policyholder</b>	<i>n.</i> the person to whom an insurance policy is issued
16	<b>premium</b>	<i>n.</i> a payment, usually monthly, yearly etc, for an insurance policy
17	<b>product liability</b>	<i>n.</i> liability or responsibility of a firm for damage caused by one of its products
18	<b>public liability</b>	<i>n.</i> responsibility of a firm for damage caused to a member of the public
19	<b>reinsurance</b>	<i>n.</i> the insuring of risk by one insurance company with another - <b>to reinsure</b> <i>v.</i>
20	<b>risk</b>	<i>n.</i> 1 chance or possibility of injury, loss etc 2 person or thing causing risk

### Contracts

1	<b>agreement</b>	<i>n.</i> an arrangement between two or more people, countries etc; contract
2	<b>appendix</b>	<i>n.</i> additional or supplementary material at end of contract, book etc
3	<b>arbitration</b>	<i>n.</i> settlement of a dispute by a person chosen by both parties - <b>to arbitrate</b> <i>v.</i>
4	<b>article</b>	<i>n.</i> a particular statement or stipulation in a contract etc; clause
5	<b>clause</b>	<i>n.</i> a particular statement or stipulation in a contract etc; article
6	<b>condition</b>	<i>n.</i> anything necessary before the performance of something else
7	<b>force majeure</b>	<i>n.</i> superior, power; unforeseeable event excusing one party from fulfilling contract
8	<b>fulfil</b>	<i>v.</i> to satisfy a condition; to complete the required task; to fulfill <sup>US</sup>
9	<b>herein</b>	<i>adv.</i> in here; in this (document etc)
10	<b>hereinafter</b>	<i>adv.</i> in the following part (of this document etc)
11	<b>hereto</b>	<i>adv.</i> to this (document etc) [eg: attached hereto]
12	<b>heretofore</b>	<i>adv.</i> up until now; until the present; before this
13	<b>in behalf of</b>	in the interests of (person etc); for (person etc); on behalf of <sup>UK</sup>
14	<b>null and void</b>	invalid; without legal force; not binding
15	<b>on the one hand</b>	on one side - <b>on the other hand</b> on the other side
16	<b>party</b>	<i>n.</i> the person or persons forming one side of an agreement
17	<b>stipulate</b>	<i>v.</i> to specify as an essential condition - <b>stipulation</b> <i>n.</i>
18	<b>terms</b>	<i>n.</i> conditions or stipulations
19	<b>warrant</b>	<i>v.</i> to give formal assurance; to guarantee
20	<b>whereas</b>	conj: it being the case that; in view of the fact that [in introduction to contracts]

### Advertising

1	<b>ad</b>	<i>abbr.</i> advertisement - <b>advert</b> <i>abbr.</i>
2	<b>advertisement</b>	<i>n.</i> item of publicity for a product or service, in magazine, on TV etc
3	<b>advertising agency</b>	<i>n.</i> company specialising in producing and placing advertisements for clients
4	<b>AIDA</b>	<i>abbr.</i> Attention, Interest, Desire, Action - the objective of all advertisements
5	<b>benefit</b>	<i>n.</i> advantage of a product or service, usually derived from its features
6	<b>billboard</b> <sup>US</sup>	<i>n.</i> signboard, usually outdoors, for advertising posters; hoarding <sup>UK</sup>
7	<b>circulation</b>	<i>n.</i> average number of copies of a magazine sold in a particular period

8	<b>classified ads</b>	<i>n.</i> small advertisements in magazine or newspaper categorised by subject
9	<b>commercial</b>	<i>n.</i> paid advertisement on radio or TV
10	<b>coupon</b>	<i>n.</i> part of a printed advertisement used for ordering goods, samples etc
11	<b>double-page spread</b>	<i>n.</i> advertisement printed across 2 pages in a magazine or newspaper
12	<b>eye-catcher</b> <sup>US</sup>	<i>n.</i> something that especially attracts one's attention - <b>eye-catching</b> <i>adj.</i>
13	<b>features</b>	<i>n.</i> special characteristics of a product, usually leading to certain benefits
14	<b>hoarding</b> <sup>UK</sup>	<i>n.</i> signboard, usually outdoors, for advertising posters; billboard <sup>US</sup>
15	<b>poster</b>	<i>n.</i> large sheet of paper, usually illustrated, used as advertisement
16	<b>prime time</b>	<i>n.</i> hours on radio & TV with largest audience, esp. the evening hours
17	<b>promote</b>	<i>v.</i> to (try to) increase sales of a product by publicising and advertising it
18	<b>slot</b>	<i>n.</i> specific time in a broadcasting schedule, when a commercial may be shown
19	<b>target</b>	<i>n.</i> objective; what one is aiming at - <b>target audience</b> <i>n.</i>
20	<b>U.S.P.</b>	<i>abbr.</i> Unique Selling Proposition; what makes a product different from others

### Marketing

1	<b>brand</b>	<i>n.</i> a particular make of product - <b>to brand</b> <i>v.</i> - <b>branded</b> <i>adj.</i>
2	<b>consumer</b>	<i>n.</i> the person who buys and uses a product or service - <b>to consume</b> <i>v.</i>
3	<b>cost</b>	<i>v.</i> [cost, costed, costed] to estimate the price of making a product - <b>costing</b> <i>n.</i>
4	<b>develop</b>	<i>v.</i> to create a new product or improve an existing one - <b>product development</b> <i>n.</i>
5	<b>distribution</b>	<i>n.</i> the delivering of products to end-users, inc. advertising, storing etc
6	<b>end-user</b>	<i>n.</i> the person, customer etc who is the ultimate (and so real) user of a product
7	<b>image</b>	<i>n.</i> the concept or perception of a firm or product held by the general public
8	<b>label</b>	<i>n.</i> small piece of paper, metal etc on a product giving information about it
9	<b>launch</b>	<i>v.</i> to introduce a new product, with publicity etc - <b>product launch</b> <i>n.</i>
10	<b>mail order</b>	<i>n.</i> the selling of goods by post - <b>mail-order catalogue</b> <i>n.</i>
11	<b>market research</b>	<i>n.</i> study of consumers' needs & preferences, often for a particular product
12	<b>packaging</b> <sup>UK</sup>	<i>n.</i> the wrapping or container for a product
13	<b>point of sale</b>	<i>n.</i> the place where a product is actually sold to the public - <b>point-of-sale</b> <i>adj.</i>
14	<b>product</b>	<i>n.</i> something made to be sold; merchandise [includes services] - <b>to produce</b> <i>v.</i>
15	<b>public relations</b>	<i>n.</i> creation and maintenance of a good public image - <b>public relations officer</b> <i>n.</i>
16	<b>registered</b>	<i>adj.</i> registered or officially recorded as a trademark - <b>@</b> <i>abbr.</i> - <b>to register</b> <i>v.</i>
17	<b>sponsor</b>	<i>n.</i> firm supporting an organisation in return for advertising space - <i>also</i> <i>v.</i>
18	<b>S.W.O.T.</b>	<i>abbr.</i> Strength, Weaknesses, Opportunities, Threats
19	<b>total product</b>	<i>n.</i> the whole product, inc. name, packaging, instructions, reliability, after-sales etc
20	<b>trademark</b>	<i>n.</i> special symbol, design, word etc used to represent a product or firm - " <i>abbr.</i>

### British/North American Vocabulary

Here are some of the main differences in vocabulary between British and North American English.

British	Canadian	American	Romanian
anywhere	anywhere	anyplace	
autumn	autumn/fall	fall	
barrister	lawyer	attorney	
beeper, pager	pager	beeper	
bill (restaurant)	bill	check	
biscuit	cookie	cookie	
block of flats	apartment block	apartment building	
bonnet	hood	hood	
boot (of car)	trunk (of car)	trunk (of automobile)	
car	car	automobile	
caravan	trailer	trailer	
chemist	drugstore	drugstore	
chest of drawers	dresser	bureau	
chips	French fries/chips	French fries	
chocolate bar	chocolate bar	candy bar	
the cinema	movies	the movies	
clothes peg	clothes peg	clothespin	

coffin	coffin	casket	
condom	condom	rubber	
crisps	potato chips	potato chips	
crossroads	intersection	intersection	
cupboard	cupboard	closet	
cutlery	cutlery	silverware	
diversion	diversion, detour	detour	
drawing-pin	thumbtack	thumbtack	
driving licence	driver's licence	driver's license	
dummy ( <i>for babies</i> )	soother	pacifier	
dustbin	garbage can, trash can	ashcan, garbage can, trashcan	
dustman	garbageman	garbage collector	
engine	engine	motor	
estate agent	real estate agent	realtor	
film	movie	movie	
flat	apartment	apartment	
flat tyre	flat tire	flat	
flyover	overpass	overpass	
galoshes	galoshes	toe rubbers	
gear-lever	gearshift	gearshift	
Girl Guide	Girl Guide	Girl Scout	
ground floor	ground floor, main floor	first floor	
handbag	handbag	purse	
holiday	holiday	vacation	
jam	jam	jelly	
jeans	jeans	blue jeans	
jug	jug	pitcher	
lift	elevator	elevator	
lorry	truck	truck	
luggage	luggage	baggage	
mad	crazy	crazy	
main road	main road, main thoroughfare	highway	
maize	corn	corn	
maths	math	math	
mobile ( <i>phone</i> )	cellular phone	cellular	
motorbike	motorbike, motorcycle	motorcycle	
motorway	highway, thoroughfare	freeway, expressway	
motorway	freeway	freeway	
napkin	serviette, table napkin	napkin	
nappy	diaper	diaper	
naughts and crosses	tick-tack-toe	tic-tack-toe	
pants	shorts	shorts	
pavement	sidewalk, pavement	sidewalk	
petrol	gas, gasoline	gas, gasoline	
The Plough	Big Dipper	Big Dipper	
pocket money	pocket money	allowance	
post	mail, post	mail	
postbox	mailbox, post-box	mailbox	
postcode	postal code	zip code	
postman	mailman, letter carrier	mailman	
pub	bar, pub	bar	
public toilet	bathroom	rest room	
puncture	flat	flat	
railway	railway	railroad	
return ( <i>ticket</i> )	return	round-trip	
reverse charge	collect call, reverse the charges	call collect	
ring road	ring road	beltway	
road surface	road surface, asphalt	pavement	

roundabout	roundabout	traffic circle	
rubber	eraser	eraser	
rubbish	garbage, trash, refuse	garbage, trash	
rubbish-bin	garbage can, trashcan	garbage can, trashcan	
saloon ( <i>car</i> )	sedan ( <i>car</i> )	sedan ( <i>automobile</i> )	
shop	shop, store	store	
single ( <i>ticket</i> )	one-way (ticket)	one-way	
solicitor	lawyer	attorney	
somewhere	somewhere	someplace	
spanner	wrench	wrench	
spirits	spirits	hard liquor	
sweets	candy, sweets	candy	
tap ( <i>indoors</i> )	tap ( <i>indoors</i> )	faucet	
tap ( <i>outdoors</i> )	tap ( <i>outdoors</i> )	spigot	
taxi	taxi	cab	
tea-towel	dish-towel	dish-towel	
telly, TV	TV	TV	
third-party insurance	third-party insurance	liability insurance	
timetable	schedule	schedule	
tin	tin can	can	
toll motorway	toll highway	turnpike	
torch	flashlight	flashlight	
trousers	pants	pants	
tube ( <i>train</i> )	subway, metro	subway	
underground ( <i>train</i> )	subway, metro	subway	
underpants	shorts	shorts	
van	truck	truck	
vest	undershirt	undershirt	
waistcoat	vest	vest	
wallet	wallet	billfold	
wellington boots	rubber boots	rubbers	
whisky	whisky, scotch	whiskey, scotch	
windscreen	windshield	windshield	
zip	zipper	zipper	

### Phrasal Verbs List

Verb	Meaning	Example
<b>ask someone out</b>	invite on a date	Brian <b>asked</b> Judy <b>out</b> to dinner and a movie.
<b>ask around</b>	ask many people the same question	I <b>asked around</b> but nobody has seen my wallet.
<b>add up to something</b>	equal	Your purchases <b>add up to</b> \$205.32.
<b>back something up</b>	reverse	You'll have to <b>back up</b> your car so that I can get out.
<b>back someone up</b>	support	My wife <b>backed me up</b> over my decision to quit my job.
<b>blow up</b>	explode	The racing car <b>blew up</b> after it crashed into the fence.
<b>blow something up</b>	add air	We have to <b>blow 50 balloons up</b> for the party.
<b>break down</b>	stop functioning (vehicle, machine)	Our car <b>broke down</b> at the side of the highway in the snowstorm.
<b>break down</b>	get upset	The woman <b>broke down</b> when the police told her that her son had died.
<b>break something down</b>	divide into smaller parts	Our teacher <b>broke</b> the final project <b>down</b> into three separate parts.

<b>break in</b>	force entry to a building	Somebody <b>broke in</b> last night and stole our stereo.
<b>break into something</b>	enter forcibly	The firemen had to <b>break into</b> the room to rescue the children.
<b>break something in</b>	wear something a few times so that it doesn't look/feel new	I need to <b>break</b> these shoes <b>in</b> before we run next week.
<b>break in</b>	interrupt	The TV station <b>broke in</b> to report the news of the president's death.
<b>break up</b>	end a relationship	My boyfriend and I <b>broke up</b> before I moved to America.
<b>break up</b>	start laughing (informal)	The kids just <b>broke up</b> as soon as the clown started talking.
<b>break out</b>	escape	The prisoners <b>broke out</b> of jail when the guards weren't looking.
<b>break out in something</b>	develop a skin condition	I <b>broke out in</b> a rash after our camping trip.
<b>bring someone down</b>	make unhappy	This sad music is <b>bringing me down</b> .
<b>bring someone up</b>	raise a child	My grandparents <b>brought me up</b> after my parents died.
<b>bring something up</b>	start talking about a subject	My mother walks out of the room when my father <b>brings up</b> sports.
<b>bring something up</b>	vomit	He drank so much that he <b>brought his dinner up</b> in the toilet.
<b>call around</b>	phone many different places/people	We <b>called around</b> but we weren't able to find the car part we needed.
<b>call someone back</b>	return a phone call	I <b>called</b> the company <b>back</b> but the offices were closed for the weekend.
<b>call something off</b>	cancel	Jason <b>called</b> the wedding <b>off</b> because he wasn't in love with his fiancé.
<b>call on someone</b>	ask for an answer or opinion	The professor <b>called on</b> me for question 1.
<b>call on someone</b>	visit someone	We <b>called on</b> you last night but you weren't home.
<b>call someone up</b>	phone	Give me your phone number and I will <b>call you up</b> when we are in town.
<b>calm down</b>	relax after being angry	You are still mad. You need to <b>calm down</b> before you drive the car.
not <b>care for someone/something</b>	not like (formal)	I don't <b>care for</b> his behaviour.
<b>catch up</b>	get to the same point as someone else	You'll have to run faster than that if you want to <b>catch up</b> with Marty.
<b>check in</b>	arrive and register at a hotel or airport	We will get the hotel keys when we <b>check in</b> .
<b>check out</b>	leave a hotel	You have to <b>check out</b> of the hotel before 11:00 AM.
<b>check someone/something out</b>	look at carefully, investigate	The company <b>checks out</b> all new employees.
<b>check out someone/something</b>	look at (informal)	<b>Check out</b> the crazy hair on that guy!
<b>cheer up</b>	become happier	She <b>cheered up</b> when she heard the good news.
<b>cheer someone up</b>	make happier	I brought you some flowers to <b>cheer you up</b> .
<b>chip in</b>	help	If everyone <b>chips in</b> we can get the kitchen painted by noon.
<b>clean something up</b>	tidy, clean	Please <b>clean up</b> your bedroom before you go outside.
<b>come across something</b>	find unexpectedly	I <b>came across</b> these old photos when I was tidying the closet.
<b>come apart</b>	separate	The top and bottom <b>come apart</b> if you pull hard enough.

<b>come down with</b> <i>something</i>	become sick	My nephew <b>came down with</b> chicken pox this weekend.
<b>come forward</b>	volunteer for a task or to give evidence	The woman <b>came forward</b> with her husband's finger prints.
<b>come from</b> somewhere	originate in	The art of origami <b>comes from</b> Asia.
<b>count on</b> <i>someone/something</i>	rely on	I am <b>counting on</b> you to make dinner while I am out.
<b>cross</b> <i>something out</i>	draw a line through	Please <b>cross out</b> your old address and write your new one.
<b>cut back on</b> <i>something</i>	consume less	My doctor wants me to <b>cut back on</b> sweets and fatty foods.
<b>cut</b> <i>something down</i>	make something fall to the ground	We had to <b>cut</b> the old tree in our yard <b>down</b> after the storm.
<b>cut in</b>	interrupt	Your father <b>cut in</b> while I was dancing with your uncle.
<b>cut in</b>	pull in too closely in front of another vehicle	The bus driver got angry when that car <b>cut in</b> .
<b>cut in</b>	start operating (of an engine or electrical device)	The air conditioner <b>cuts in</b> when the temperature gets to 22°C.
<b>cut</b> <i>something off</i>	remove with something sharp	The doctors <b>cut off</b> his leg because it was severely injured.
<b>cut</b> <i>something off</i>	stop providing	The phone company <b>cut off</b> our phone because we didn't pay the bill.
<b>cut</b> <i>someone off</i>	take out of a will	My grandparents <b>cut</b> my father <b>off</b> when he remarried.
<b>cut</b> <i>something out</i>	remove part of something (usually with scissors and paper)	I <b>cut</b> this ad <b>out</b> of the newspaper.
<b>do</b> <i>someone/something over</i>	beat up, ransack (Br.E., informal)	He's lucky to be alive. His shop was <b>done over</b> by a street gang.
<b>do</b> <i>something over</i>	do again (N.Amer.)	My teacher wants me to <b>do</b> my essay <b>over</b> because she doesn't like my topic.
<b>do away with</b> <i>something</i>	discard	It's time to <b>do away with</b> all of these old tax records.
<b>do</b> <i>something up</i>	fasten, close	<b>Do</b> your coat <b>up</b> before you go outside. It's snowing!
<b>dress up</b>	wear nice clothing	It's a fancy restaurant so we have to <b>dress up</b> .
<b>drop back</b>	move back in a position/group	Andrea <b>dropped back</b> to third place when she fell off her bike.
<b>drop in/by/over</b>	come without an appointment	I might <b>drop in/by/over</b> for tea some time this week.
<b>drop</b> <i>someone/something off</i>	take someone/something somewhere and leave them/it there	I have to <b>drop</b> my sister <b>off</b> at work before I come over.
<b>drop out</b>	quit a class, school etc	I <b>dropped out</b> of Science because it was too difficult.
<b>eat out</b>	eat at a restaurant	I don't feel like cooking tonight. Let's <b>eat out</b> .
<b>end up</b>	eventually reach/do/decide	We <b>ended up</b> renting a movie instead of going to the theatre.
<b>fall apart</b>	break into pieces	My new dress <b>fell apart</b> in the washing machine.
<b>fall down</b>	fall to the ground	The picture that you hung up last night <b>fell down</b> this morning.
<b>fall out</b>	separate from an interior	The money must have <b>fallen out</b> of my pocket.
<b>fall out</b>	(of hair, teeth) become loose and unattached	His hair started to <b>fall out</b> when he was only 35.
<b>figure</b> <i>something out</i>	understand, find the answer	I need to <b>figure out</b> how to fit the piano and the bookshelf in this room.

<b>fill something in</b>	to write information in blanks (Br.E.)	Please <b>fill in</b> the form with your name, address, and phone number.
<b>fill something out</b>	to write information in blanks (N.Amer.)	The form must be <b>filled out</b> in capital letters.
<b>fill something up</b>	fill to the top	I always <b>fill</b> the water jug <b>up</b> when it is empty.
<b>find out</b>	discover	We don't know where he lives. How can we <b>find out</b> ?
<b>find something out</b>	discover	We tried to keep the time of the party a secret, but Samantha <b>found it out</b> .
<b>get something across/over</b>	communicate, make understandable	I tried to <b>get</b> my point <b>across/over</b> to the judge but she wouldn't listen.
<b>get along/on</b>	like each other	I was surprised how well my new girlfriend and my sister <b>got along/on</b> .
<b>get around</b>	have mobility	My grandfather can <b>get around</b> fine in his new wheelchair.
<b>get away</b>	go on a vacation	We worked so hard this year that we had to <b>get away</b> for a week.
<b>get away with something</b>	do without being noticed or punished	Jason always <b>gets away with</b> cheating in his maths tests.
<b>get back</b>	return	We <b>got back</b> from our vacation last week.
<b>get something back</b>	receive something you had before	Liz finally <b>got</b> her Science notes <b>back</b> from my room-mate.
<b>get back at someone</b>	retaliate, take revenge	My sister <b>got back at</b> me for stealing her shoes. She stole my favourite hat.
<b>get back into something</b>	become interested in something again	I finally <b>got back into</b> my novel and finished it.
<b>get on something</b>	step onto a vehicle	We're going to freeze out here if you don't let us <b>get on</b> the bus.
<b>get over something</b>	recover from an illness, loss, difficulty	I just <b>got over</b> the flu and now my sister has it.
<b>get over something</b>	overcome a problem	The company will have to close if it can't <b>get over</b> the new regulations.
<b>get round to something</b>	finally find time to do (N.Amer.: <b>get around to something</b> )	I don't know when I am going to <b>get round to</b> writing the thank you cards.
<b>get together</b>	meet (usually for social reasons)	Let's <b>get together</b> for a BBQ this weekend.
<b>get up</b>	get out of bed	I <b>got up</b> early today to study for my exam.
<b>get up</b>	stand	You should <b>get up</b> and give the elderly man your seat.
<b>give someone away</b>	reveal hidden information about someone	His wife <b>gave</b> him <b>away</b> to the police.
<b>give someone away</b>	take the bride to the altar	My father <b>gave</b> me <b>away</b> at my wedding.
<b>give something away</b>	ruin a secret	My little sister <b>gave</b> the surprise party <b>away</b> by accident.
<b>give something away</b>	give something to someone for free	The library was <b>giving away</b> old books on Friday.
<b>give something back</b>	return a borrowed item	I have to <b>give</b> these skates <b>back</b> to Franz before his hockey game.
<b>give in</b>	reluctantly stop fighting or arguing	My boyfriend didn't want to go to the ballet, but he finally <b>gave in</b> .
<b>give something out</b>	give to many people (usually at no cost)	They were <b>giving out</b> free perfume samples at the department store.
<b>give something up</b>	quit a habit	I am <b>giving up</b> smoking as of January 1st.
<b>give up</b>	stop trying	My maths homework was too difficult so I <b>gave up</b> .

<b>go after</b> <i>someone</i>	follow someone	My brother tried to <b>go after</b> the thief in his car.
<b>go after</b> <i>something</i>	try to achieve something	I <b>went after</b> my dream and now I am a published writer.
<b>go against</b> <i>someone</i>	compete, oppose	We are <b>going against</b> the best soccer team in the city tonight.
<b>go ahead</b>	start, proceed	Please <b>go ahead</b> and eat before the food gets cold.
<b>go back</b>	return to a place	I have to <b>go back</b> home and get my lunch.
<b>go out</b>	leave home to go on a social event	We're <b>going out</b> for dinner tonight.
<b>go out with</b> <i>someone</i>	date	Jesse has been <b>going out with</b> Luke since they met last winter.
<b>go over</b> <i>something</i>	review	Please <b>go over</b> your answers before you submit your test.
<b>go over</b>	visit someone nearby	I haven't seen Tina for a long time. I think I'll <b>go over</b> for an hour or two.
<b>go without</b> <i>something</i>	suffer lack or deprivation	When I was young, we <b>went without</b> winter boots.
<b>grow apart</b>	stop being friends over time	My best friend and I <b>grew apart</b> after she changed schools.
<b>grow back</b>	regrow	My roses <b>grew back</b> this summer.
<b>grow up</b>	become an adult	When Jack <b>grows up</b> he wants to be a fireman.
<b>grow out of</b> <i>something</i>	get too big for	Elizabeth needs a new pair of shoes because she has <b>grown out of</b> her old ones.
<b>grow into</b> <i>something</i>	grow big enough to fit	This bike is too big for him now, but he should <b>grow into</b> it by next year.
<b>hand something down</b>	give something used to someone else	I <b>handed</b> my old comic books <b>down</b> to my little cousin.
<b>hand something in</b>	submit	I have to <b>hand in</b> my essay by Friday.
<b>hand something out</b>	to distribute to a group of people	We will <b>hand out</b> the invitations at the door.
<b>hand something over</b>	give (usually unwillingly)	The police asked the man to <b>hand over</b> his wallet and his weapons.
<b>hang in</b>	stay positive (N.Amer., informal)	<b>Hang in</b> there. I'm sure you'll find a job very soon.
<b>hang on</b>	wait a short time (informal)	<b>Hang on</b> while I grab my coat and shoes!
<b>hang out</b>	spend time relaxing (informal)	Instead of going to the party we are just going to <b>hang out</b> at my place.
<b>hang up</b>	end a phone call	He didn't say goodbye before he <b>hung up</b> .
<b>hold someone/something back</b>	prevent from doing/going	I had to <b>hold</b> my dog <b>back</b> because there was a cat in the park.
<b>hold something back</b>	hide an emotion	Jamie <b>held back</b> his tears at his grandfather's funeral.
<b>hold on</b>	wait a short time	Please <b>hold on</b> while I transfer you to the Sales Department.
<b>hold onto</b> <i>someone/something</i>	hold firmly using your hands or arms	<b>Hold onto</b> your hat because it's very windy outside.
<b>hold someone/something up</b>	rob	A man in a black mask <b>held</b> the bank <b>up</b> this morning.
<b>keep on doing</b> <i>something</i>	continue doing	<b>Keep on</b> stirring until the liquid comes to a boil.
<b>keep something from</b> <i>someone</i>	not tell	We <b>kept</b> our relationship <b>from</b> our parents for two years.
<b>keep someone/something out</b>	stop from entering	Try to <b>keep</b> the wet dog <b>out</b> of the living room.

<b>keep something up</b>	continue at the same rate	If you <b>keep</b> those results <b>up</b> you will get into a great college.
<b>let someone down</b>	fail to support or help, disappoint	I need you to be on time. Don't <b>let me down</b> this time.
<b>let someone in</b>	allow to enter	Can you <b>let</b> the cat <b>in</b> before you go to school?
<b>look after someone/something</b>	take care of	I have to <b>look after</b> my sick grandmother.
<b>look down on someone</b>	think less of, consider inferior	Ever since we stole that chocolate bar your dad has <b>looked down on</b> me.
<b>look for someone/something</b>	try to find	I'm <b>looking for</b> a red dress for the wedding.
<b>look forward to something</b>	be excited about the future	I'm <b>looking forward to</b> the Christmas break.
<b>look into something</b>	investigate	We are going to <b>look into</b> the price of snowboards today.
<b>look out</b>	be careful, vigilant, and take notice	Look out! That car's going to hit you!
<b>look out for someone/something</b>	be especially vigilant for	Don't forget to <b>look out for</b> snakes on the hiking trail.
<b>look something over</b>	check, examine	Can you <b>look over</b> my essay for spelling mistakes?
<b>look something up</b>	search and find information in a reference book or database	We can <b>look</b> her phone number <b>up</b> on the Internet.
<b>look up to someone</b>	have a lot of respect for	My little sister has always <b>looked up</b> to me.
<b>make something up</b>	invent, lie about something	Josie <b>made up</b> a story about about why we were late.
<b>make up</b>	forgive each other	We were angry last night, but we <b>made up</b> at breakfast.
<b>make someone up</b>	apply cosmetics to	My sisters <b>made me up</b> for my graduation party.
<b>mix something up</b>	confuse two or more things	I <b>mixed up</b> the twins' names again!
<b>pass away</b>	die	His uncle <b>passed away</b> last night after a long illness.
<b>pass out</b>	faint	It was so hot in the church that an elderly lady <b>passed out</b> .
<b>pass something out</b>	give the same thing to many people	The professor <b>passed</b> the textbooks <b>out</b> before class.
<b>pass something up</b>	decline (usually something good)	I <b>passed up</b> the job because I am afraid of change.
<b>pay someone back</b>	return owed money	Thanks for buying my ticket. I'll <b>pay you back</b> on Friday.
<b>pay for something</b>	be punished for doing something bad	That bully will <b>pay for</b> being mean to my little brother.
<b>pick something out</b>	choose	I <b>picked out</b> three sweaters for you to try on.
<b>point someone/something out</b>	indicate with your finger	I'll <b>point</b> my boyfriend <b>out</b> when he runs by.
<b>put something down</b>	put what you are holding on a surface or floor	You can <b>put</b> the groceries <b>down</b> on the kitchen counter.
<b>put someone down</b>	insult, make someone feel stupid	The students <b>put</b> the substitute teacher <b>down</b> because his pants were too short.
<b>put something off</b>	postpone	We are <b>putting off</b> our trip until January because of the hurricane.
<b>put something out</b>	extinguish	The neighbours <b>put</b> the fire <b>out</b> before the firemen arrived.
<b>put something together</b>	assemble	I have to <b>put</b> the crib <b>together</b> before the baby arrives.
<b>put up with someone/something</b>	tolerate	I don't think I can <b>put up with</b> three

		small children in the car.
<b>put something on</b>	put clothing/accessories on your body	Don't forget to <b>put on</b> your new earrings for the party.
<b>run into someone/something</b>	meet unexpectedly	I <b>ran into</b> an old school-friend at the mall.
<b>run over someone/something</b>	drive a vehicle over a person or thing	I accidentally <b>ran over</b> your bicycle in the driveway.
<b>run over/through something</b>	rehearse, review	Let's <b>run over/through</b> these lines one more time before the show.
<b>run away</b>	leave unexpectedly, escape	The child <b>ran away</b> from home and has been missing for three days.
<b>run out</b>	have none left	We <b>ran out</b> of shampoo so I had to wash my hair with soap.
<b>send something back</b>	return (usually by mail)	My letter got <b>sent back</b> to me because I used the wrong stamp.
<b>set something up</b>	arrange, organize	Our boss <b>set a meeting up</b> with the president of the company.
<b>set someone up</b>	trick, trap	The police <b>set up</b> the car thief by using a hidden camera.
<b>shop around</b>	compare prices	I want to <b>shop around</b> a little before I decide on these boots.
<b>show off</b>	act extra special for people watching (usually boastfully)	He always <b>shows off</b> on his skateboard
<b>sleep over</b>	stay somewhere for the night (informal)	You should <b>sleep over</b> tonight if the weather is too bad to drive home.
<b>sort something out</b>	organize, resolve a problem	We need to <b>sort the bills out</b> before the first of the month.
<b>stick to something</b>	continue doing something, limit yourself to one particular thing	You will lose weight if you <b>stick to</b> the diet.
<b>switch something off</b>	stop the energy flow, turn off	The light's too bright. Could you <b>switch it off</b> .
<b>switch something on</b>	start the energy flow, turn on	We heard the news as soon as we <b>switched on</b> the car radio.
<b>take after someone</b>	resemble a family member	I <b>take after</b> my mother. We are both impatient.
<b>take something apart</b>	purposely break into pieces	He <b>took</b> the car brakes <b>apart</b> and found the problem.
<b>take something back</b>	return an item	I have to <b>take</b> our new TV <b>back</b> because it doesn't work.
<b>take off</b>	start to fly	My plane <b>takes off</b> in five minutes.
<b>take something off</b>	remove something (usually clothing)	<b>Take off</b> your socks and shoes and come in the lake!
<b>take something out</b>	remove from a place or thing	Can you <b>take</b> the garbage <b>out</b> to the street for me?
<b>take someone out</b>	pay for someone to go somewhere with you	My grandparents <b>took us out</b> for dinner and a movie.
<b>tear something up</b>	rip into pieces	I <b>tore up</b> my ex-boyfriend's letters and gave them back to him.
<b>think back</b>	remember (often + to, sometimes + on)	When I <b>think back</b> on my youth, I wish I had studied harder.
<b>think something over</b>	consider	I'll have to <b>think</b> this job offer <b>over</b> before I make my final decision.
<b>throw something away</b>	dispose of	We <b>threw</b> our old furniture <b>away</b> when we won the lottery.
<b>turn something down</b>	decrease the volume or strength (heat, light etc)	Please <b>turn</b> the TV <b>down</b> while the guests are here.
<b>turn something down</b>	refuse	I <b>turned</b> the job <b>down</b> because I don't want to move.
<b>turn something off</b>	stop the energy flow, switch off	Your mother wants you to <b>turn</b> the TV <b>off</b> and come for dinner.

<b>turn something on</b>	start the energy, switch on	It's too dark in here. Let's <b>turn</b> some lights <b>on</b> .
<b>turn something up</b>	increase the volume or strength (heat, light etc)	Can you <b>turn</b> the music <b>up</b> ? This is my favourite song.
<b>turn up</b>	appear suddenly	Our cat <b>turned up</b> after we put posters up all over the neighbourhood.
<b>try something on</b>	sample clothing	I'm going to <b>try</b> these jeans <b>on</b> , but I don't think they will fit.
<b>try something out</b>	test	I am going to <b>try</b> this new brand of detergent <b>out</b> .
<b>use something up</b>	finish the supply	The kids <b>used</b> all of the toothpaste <b>up</b> so we need to buy some more.
<b>wake up</b>	stop sleeping	We have to <b>wake up</b> early for work on Monday.
<b>warm someone/something up</b>	increase the temperature	You can <b>warm</b> your feet <b>up</b> in front of the fireplace.
<b>warm up</b>	prepare body for exercise	I always <b>warm up</b> by doing sit-ups before I go for a run.
<b>wear off</b>	fade away	Most of my make-up <b>wore off</b> before I got to the party.
<b>work out</b>	exercise	I <b>work out</b> at the gym three times a week.
<b>work out</b>	be successful	Our plan <b>worked out</b> fine.
<b>work something out</b>	make a calculation	We have to <b>work out</b> the total cost before we buy the house.

## Say or Tell?

**Say** and **tell** have similar meanings. They both mean to communicate verbally with someone. But we often use them differently.

The simple way to think of say and tell is:

- You **say** something
- You **tell** someone something

### You say something

You **tell** someone something

Ram **said** that he was tired.

Ram **told** Jane that he was tired.

Anthony **says** you have a new job.

Anthony **tells** me you have a new job.

Tara **said**: "I love you."

Tara **told** John that she loved him.

But, of course, it is not always so easy. Here are a few rules to help you.

### Personal object

We usually follow tell with a personal object (the person that we are speaking to). We usually use say without a personal object:

- She told me that she loved John.
- She said that she loved John.
- He told everybody that he had to leave.
- He said that he had to leave.

### Say "to someone"

With say, we sometimes use "to someone":

- He said to me that he was tired.
- Tara said to Ram that he had done very well.
- Anthony said to her, "I hope you come soon."
- "I'd like to sleep," she said to him quietly.

### Direct speech

We can use say with direct speech. We use tell only with direct speech that is an instruction or information:

## Orders, advice

We use tell + object + infinitive for orders or advice:

- She told him to sit down.
- They told me not to wait.
- Tell Neil to have a holiday and forget her.

## Phrases

Here are a few fixed phrases with tell. We cannot use say with these phrases:

- tell (someone) a story
- tell (someone) a lie
- tell (someone) the truth
- tell the future (= to know what the future will bring)
- tell the time (= know how to read a clock)

## Right and wrong

Read these examples of correct and incorrect usage:

### We cannot...

**These are NOT possible...**

**These are possible...**

say someone to do something

Tara said Jo to go away.

Tara told Jo to go away.

say someone something

Panita said me that she was hungry.

Panita told me that she was hungry.

tell something

He told that he likes coffee.

He said that he likes coffee.

tell to someone

Tookta told to me that she was coming.

Tookta told me that she was coming.

Tookta said to me that she was coming.

say a lie

Siriluck always says lies.

Siriluck always tells lies.

tell somebody "direct speech"

(except instructions and information)

Ram told Nok: "Let's turn on the TV."

Ram said to Nok: "Let's turn on the TV."

(Ram told Nok, "Turn on the TV.")

(Ram told Nok: "I was born in 1985.")

say or tell a reported question

She said if I wanted to come.

She asked if I wanted to come.

- Amanda said, "Hello John. How are you?"
- "That's great" she said.
- He told her: "Open the door quietly."
- She told me, "I have never been to England."

Tookta told what I wanted to do.  
Took asked what I wanted to do.

We can use say with direct questions, but we cannot use tell:

- She said: "Do you love me?"
- The policeman said to the prisoner, "Where were you at 8pm?"

### Reported speech

We can use say and tell to talk about reported information:

- She said that it was raining.
- She told me that she would call at 2pm.

We cannot use say or tell to talk about reported questions. We must use ask (or a similar verb):

- She asked if I had ever been there.
- They asked what I wanted to eat.
- She asked where he lived.
- He asked if she wanted to go home.

### Irregular Verbs List

This is a list of some irregular verbs in English. Of course, there are many others, but these are the more common irregular verbs.

Base Form	Past Simple	Past Participle	Romanian
awake	awoke	awoken	
be	was, were	been	
beat	beat	beaten	
become	became	become	
begin	began	begun	
bend	bent	bent	
bet	bet	bet	
bid	bid	bid	
bite	bit	bitten	
blow	blew	blown	
break	broke	broken	
bring	brought	brought	
broadcast	broadcast	broadcast	
build	built	built	
burn	burned/burnt	burned/burnt	
buy	bought	bought	
catch	caught	caught	

choose	chose	chosen	
come	came	come	
cost	cost	cost	
cut	cut	cut	
dig	dug	dug	
do	did	done	
draw	drew	drawn	
dream	dreamed/dreamt	dreamed/dreamt	
drive	drove	driven	
drink	drunk	drunk	
eat	ate	eaten	
fall	fell	fallen	
feel	felt	felt	
fight	fought	fought	
find	found	found	
fly	flew	flown	
forget	forgot	forgotten	
forgive	forgave	forgiven	
freeze	froze	frozen	
get	got	gotten	
give	gave	given	
go	went	gone	
grow	grew	grown	
hang	hung	hung	
have	had	had	
hear	heard	heard	
hide	hid	hidden	
hit	hit	hit	
hold	held	held	
hurt	hurt	hurt	
keep	kept	kept	
know	knew	known	
lay	laid	laid	
lead	led	led	
learn	learned/learnt	learned/learnt	
leave	left	left	
lend	lent	lent	
let	let	let	
lie	lay	lain	
lose	lost	lost	
make	made	made	
mean	meant	meant	
meet	met	met	
pay	paid	paid	
put	put	put	
read	read	read	
ride	rode	ridden	
ring	rang	rung	
rise	rose	risen	
run	ran	run	
say	said	said	
see	saw	seen	
sell	sold	sold	
send	sent	sent	
show	showed	showed/shown	
shut	shut	shut	
sing	sang	sung	
sit	sat	sat	

sleep	slept	slept	
speak	spoke	spoken	
spend	spent	spent	
stand	stood	stood	
swim	swam	swum	
take	took	taken	
teach	taught	taught	
tear	tore	torn	
tell	told	told	
think	thought	thought	
throw	threw	thrown	
understand	understood	understood	
wake	woke	woken	
wear	wore	worn	
win	won	won	
write	wrote	written	

### Prefixes

A **prefix** is placed at the beginning of a word to modify or change its meaning. This is a list of the most common prefixes in English, together with their basic meaning and some examples. You can find more detail or precision for each prefix in any good dictionary. The origins of words are extremely complicated. You should use this list as a guide only, to help you understand possible meanings. But be very careful, because often what appears to be a prefix is not a prefix at all. Note also that this list does not include elements like "auto-" or "bio-", because these are "combining forms", not prefixes.

Prefix		Meaning	Examples
a-	<i>also</i> an-	not, without	atheist, anaemic
a-		to, towards	aside, aback
		in the process of, in a particular state	a-hunting, aglow
a-		of	anew
		completely	abashed
ab-	<i>also</i> abs-	away, from	abdicate, abstract
ad-	<i>also</i> a-, ac-, af-, ag- al-, an-, ap-, at- as-, at-	movement to, change into, addition or increase	advance, adulterate, adjunct, ascend, affiliate, affirm, aggravate, alleviate, annotate, apprehend, arrive, assemble, attend
ante-		before, preceding	antecedent, ante-room
anti-	<i>also</i> ant-	opposing, against, the opposite	anti-aircraft, antibiotic, anticlimax, Antarctic
be-		all over, all around	bespatter, beset
		completely	bewitch, bemuse
		having, covered with	bejewelled
		affect with (added to nouns)	befog
		cause to be (added to adjectives)	becalm
com-	<i>also</i> co-, col-, con-, cor-	with, jointly, completely	combat, codriver, collude, confide, corrode
contra-		against, opposite	contraceptive
counter-		opposition, opposite direction	counter-attack, counteract
de-		down, away	descend, despair, depend, deduct
		completely	denude, denigrate
		removal, reversal	de-ice, decamp
dia-	<i>also</i> di-	through, across	diagonal
dis-	<i>also</i> di-	negation, removal,	disadvantage, dismount, disbud, disbar

		expulsion	
en-	<i>also em-</i>	put into or on	engulf, enmesh
		bring into the condition of intensification	enlighten, embitter
			entangle, enrage
ex-	<i>also e-, ef-</i>	out	exit, exclude, expand
		upward	exalt, extol
		completely	excruciate, exasperate
		previous	ex-wife
extra-		outside, beyond	extracurricular
hemi-		half	hemisphere
hyper-		beyond, more than, more than normal	hypersonic, hyperactive
hypo-		under	hypodermic, hypothermia
in-	<i>also il-, im-</i>	not, without	infertile, inappropriate, impossible
	<i>also il-, im-, ir-</i>	in, into, towards, inside	influence, influx, imbibe
infra-		below	infrared, infrastructure
inter-		between, among	interact, interchange
intra-		inside, within	intramural, intravenous
non-		absence, negation	non-smoker, non-alcoholic
ob-	<i>also oc-, of-, op-</i>	blocking, against, concealing	obstruct, occult, offend, oppose
out-		surpassing, exceeding	outperform
		external, away from	outbuilding, outboard
over-		excessively, completely	overconfident, overburdened, overjoyed
		upper, outer, over, above	overcoat, overcast
peri-		round, about	perimeter
post-		after in time or order	postpone
pre-		before in time, place, order or importance	pre-adolescent, prelude, precondition
pro-		favouring, in support of	pro-African
		acting for	proconsul
		motion forwards or away	propulsion
		before in time, place or order	prologue
re-		again	repaint, reappraise, reawake
semi-		half, partly	semicircle, semi-conscious
sub-	<i>also suc-, suf-, sug-, sup-, sur-, sus-</i>	at a lower position	submarine, subsoil
		lower in rank	sub-lieutenant
		nearly, approximately	sub-tropical
syn-	<i>also sym-</i>	in union, acting together	synchronize, symmetry
trans-		across, beyond	transnational, transatlantic
		into a different state	translate
ultra-		beyond	ultraviolet, ultrasonic
		extreme	ultramicroscopic
un-		not	unacceptable, unreal, unhappy, unmanned
		reversal or cancellation of action or state	unplug, unmask
under-		beneath, below	underarm, undercarriage
		lower in rank	undersecretary
		not enough	underdeveloped

## Positive Contractions

### Notes

Be careful. Some contractions can have two or three meanings. For example, **he'd** can be **he had** or **he would**. It depends on the rest of the sentence. Look at these examples:

- He'd like to go. (He would like to go.)
- He'd finished when I arrived. (He had finished when I arrived.)

The contraction 's (= **is** or **has**) is not used only with pronouns. It can also be used with nouns, names, question words and words like "here" and "there", for example: The train's late. John's arrived. Where's the phone? Here's your change. There's a policeman.

Short form	Long form
I'm	I am
I've	I have
I'll	I will/I shall
I'd	I would/I should/I had
you're	you are
you've	you have
you'll	you will
you'd	you had/you would
he's	he has/he is
he'll	he will
he'd	he had/he would
she's	she has/she is
she'll	she will
she'd	she had/she would
it's	it has/it is
it'll	it will
we're	we are
we've	we have
we'll	we will
we'd	we had/we would
they're	they are
they've	they have
they'll	they will
they'd	they had/they would

## Negative Contractions

### Notes

With the verb "to be", two negative forms are possible - **we aren't** or **we're not** etc.

In questions, **am not** is contracted to **aren't**, for example: I'm late, aren't I?

Short form	Long form
aren't	are not
can't	cannot, can not
couldn't	could not
daren't	dare not
didn't	did not
doesn't	does not
don't	do not
hasn't	has not
Haven't	have not
hadn't	had not
isn't	is not
Mayn't	may not
mightn't	might not
Mustn't	must not
Needn't	need not
oughtn't	ought not
shan't	shall not
shouldn't	should not
wasn't	was not
Weren't	were not
won't	will not
wouldn't	would not

## Other Contractions

Here are some more examples showing some very common contractions.

It is possible, and common, to contract three words, for example: I'd've thought so = I would have thought so.

Short form	Long form	Example
here's	here is	Here's your meal.
there'll	there will	There'll be nobody here tomorrow.
there's	there is	There's a taxi!
that's	That is	That's my car!
that'll	that will	That'll be \$10, please.
how's	how is?	How's your wife?
what'll	what will?	What'll people think?
what's	what is?	What's the matter?
when's	when is?	When's the wedding?
where's	where is?	Where's the cinema?
who's	who is?	Who's your teacher?
who'd	who would?	Who'd like ice-cream?
who'll	who will?	Who'll be there?

--

## Computer Vocabulary

**Anti-virus software** - A [program](#) that finds and removes [viruses](#) from a computer.

**Backup** - A copy on [floppy disk](#) or tape of files on a PC's hard disk. A backup is used in case the hard disk file(s) are erased or damaged.

**Bit, bytes** - A bit is the smallest piece of information that computers use. For simplicity, a PC uses bits in groups of 8 called bytes (8 bits = 1 byte).

**Boot, boot up, boot disk** - You boot (or boot up) your computer when you switch it on and wait while it prepares itself. Instructions for startup are given to the computer from the boot disk, which is usually the [hard disk](#).

**Browser, to browse** - A browser is a [program](#) like Netscape or Internet Explorer. You use it to view or browse the [Internet](#).

**Bug** - A (small) defect or fault in a [program](#).

**Cache** - A kind of [memory](#) used to make a computer work faster.

**CD-ROM** - A disk for storing computer information. It looks like an audio CD.

**CPU** - Central Processing Unit. This is a PC's heart or 'brains'.

**DOS** - Disk Operating System. The original system used for PCs. You type in commands instead of pointing and clicking.

**Driver** - A small [program](#) that tells a

**Memory** - Memory is for the temporary storing of information while a computer is being used. See [RAM, ROM](#) and [Cache](#).

**MHz** - Megahertz. This describes the speed of computer equipment. The higher the MHz the better the performance.

**Modem** - Equipment connected to a computer for sending/receiving digital information by telephone line. You need a modem to connect to the [Internet](#), to send [electronic mail](#) and to fax.

**OCR** - Optical Character Recognition. OCR lets a PC read a fax or scanned image and convert it to actual lettering.

**Parallel port** - A socket at the back of a computer for connecting external equipment or [peripherals](#), especially printers.

**PC card** - A device that is the same size as a thick credit card, for plugging into a slot on notebook computers. You can buy [memory](#), [modems](#) and [hard disks](#) as PC cards.

**Peripheral** - Any equipment that is connected externally to a computer. For example, printers, [scanners](#) and [modems](#) are peripherals.

**Pixel** - The image that you see on the screen is made of thousands of tiny dots, points or pixels.

**Program** Software that operates a PC and does various things, such as writing text (word-processing program), keeping accounts (accounts program) and drawing pictures (graphics program).

PC how a [peripheral](#) works.

**Electronic mail (email, e-mail)** - Messages sent from one computer to another. You can see email on the screen or print it out.

**Floppy disk** - A cheap, removable disk used for storing or transferring information. It is floppy (soft) because it is plastic. *See* [hard disk](#).

**Floppy drive** - The device used to run a [floppy disk](#) (usually drive 'A').

**Folder (directory)** - A sub-division of a computer's [hard disk](#) into which you put files.

**Font** - A particular sort of lettering (on the screen or on paper). Arial is a font. Times New Roman is another.

**Format** - All [hard disks](#) and [floppy disks](#) have to be electronically prepared for use by a process called formatting. Hard disks are pre-formatted by the computer manufacturer. If you buy a floppy disk that is not pre-formatted, you format it yourself, using a [program](#) that comes with your PC.

**Graphics card** - The equipment inside a computer that creates the image on the screen.

**Hard disk** - The main disk inside a computer used for storing [programs](#) and information. It is hard because it is metal. *See* [floppy disk](#).

**Icon** - A small image or picture on a computer screen that is a symbol for [folders](#), disks, peripherals, [programs](#) etc.

**Internet** - International network of

**QWERTY** - The first 6 letters on English-language keyboards are Q-W-E-R-T-Y. The first 6 letters on French-language keyboards are A-Z-E-R-T-Y.

**RAM, ROM** - Two types of [memory](#). RAM (Random Access Memory) is the main memory used while the PC is working. RAM is temporary. ROM (Read Only Memory) is for information needed by the PC and cannot be changed.

**Resolution** - The number of dots or [pixels](#) per inch (sometimes per centimetre) used to create the screen image.

**Scanner** - Equipment for converting paper documents to electronic documents that can be used by a computer.

**Serial port** - Socket at the back of a PC for connecting [peripherals](#).

**Taskbar, Start button** - Two areas of the screen in [Windows 95](#). The taskbar, at the bottom of the screen, shows the [programs](#) in use. The start button, in the bottom left corner, is for opening new [programs](#).

**TFT** - Thin Film Transistor, a type of high quality screen for notebook computers.

**Virus** - A small, unauthorized [program](#) that can damage a PC.

**Windows** - An operating system used by the majority of PCs. The current versions are Windows 98 and Windows NT.

**World Wide Web, WWW, the Web** - WWW are initials that stand for World Wide Web. The Web is

computers that you connect to by telephone line. Two popular services of the Internet are the [World Wide Web](#) and [electronic mail](#).

**Kb, Mb, Gb** - Kilobytes, megabytes, gigabytes. Used to measure computer [memory](#) and storage.

one of the services available on the [Internet](#). It lets you access millions of pages through a system of links. Because it is 'world-wide', it was originally called the World Wide Web or WWW.

**WYSIWIG** - 'What You See Is What You Get.' With a [WYSIWIG program](#), if you print a document it looks the same on paper as it looks on the screen.

### Christmas Vocabulary



<b>advent</b>	the arrival of someone or something important
<b>Advent</b>	the coming (or second coming) of Jesus Christ; the month leading up to Christmas
<b>angel</b>	a spiritual being acting as a messenger of God (usually shown as a human being with wings)
<b>berry</b>	a small round fruit
<b>Bethlehem</b>	the small town in the Middle East believed to be the birthplace of Jesus Christ
<b>candle</b>	a cylinder of wax with a central wick (like string) which burns to produce light
<b>chimney</b>	a vertical pipe in a house that allows smoke and gases to escape from a fireplace (Father Christmas traditionally enters a house through its chimney)
<b>Christ</b>	the title of Jesus (also used as His name)
<b>Christian</b>	a person who believes in Christianity; also an adjective
<b>Christianity</b>	the religion based on the teachings and person of Jesus Christ
<b>Christmas</b>	the annual Christian festival celebrating the birth of Jesus Christ (Christmas Day is on 25 December)
<b>Christmas cake</b>	a rich fruit cake covered with white icing, eaten at Christmas
<b>Christmas card</b>	a greetings card that people send to friends and family at Christmas
<b>Christmas carol</b>	a religious song or popular hymn that people sing at Christmas
<b>Christmas Day</b>	25 December, the birthday of Jesus Christ
<b>Christmas Eve</b>	the evening or day before Christmas Day (24 December)
<b>Christmas holidays</b>	the holiday period for about a week before and after Christmas Day
<b>Christmas present</b>	a gift or present given at Christmas
<b>Christmas tree</b>	an evergreen tree (often a spruce) that people decorate with lights and ornaments at Christmas
<b>cracker</b>	a decorated paper tube that makes a sharp noise ("crack!") and releases a small toy when two people pull it apart
<b>decoration</b>	something that adds beauty; ornament
<b>egg-nog</b>	a traditional Christmas drink made of alcohol with beaten eggs and milk
<b>Father Christmas</b>	an imaginary being who brings presents for children on the night before Christmas Day (also known as Santa Claus) - traditionally an old man with a red suit and white beard
<b>fireplace</b>	a partly enclosed space in a house where people light a fire for warmth
<b>frankincense</b>	a gum used for incense, one of the gifts that the three wise men gave to Jesus
<b>gold</b>	a yellow precious metal, one of the gifts that the three wise men gave to Jesus
<b>holly</b>	an evergreen plant with prickly dark green leaves and red berries
<b>Jesus</b>	the name of Christ, the central figure of Christianity (believed by Christians to be the Son of God)
<b>Joseph</b>	the husband of Mary (the mother of Jesus)
<b>magi</b>	the wise men from the East who brought gifts for the baby Jesus
<b>manger</b>	a trough for food for horses or cattle (used by Mary as a cradle or bed for Jesus)

<b>Mary</b>	the mother of Jesus
<b>mistletoe</b>	a parasitic plant with white berries, traditionally used as a Christmas decoration
<b>myrrh</b>	a gum used for perfume or incense, one of the gifts that the three wise men gave to Jesus
<b>nativity</b>	the birth of a person
<b>the Nativity</b>	the birth of Jesus Christ
<b>nativity play</b>	a play that people perform at Christmas based on the birth of Jesus
<b>new year</b>	the start of a year; the period just before and after 1 January
<b>New Year's Day</b>	1 January
<b>New Year's Eve</b>	31 December
<b>ornament</b>	an object that adds beauty to something; a decoration
<b>present</b>	a thing given to somebody as a gift.
<b>reindeer</b>	a deer with large antlers found in some cold climates (believed to pull the sleigh for Santa Claus or Father Christmas)
<b>Santa Claus</b>	an imaginary being who brings presents for children on the night before Christmas Day (also known as Father Christmas) - traditionally an old man with a red suit and white beard
<b>shepherd</b>	a person who looks after sheep
<b>sleigh</b>	a sledge or light cart on runners pulled by horses or reindeer over snow and ice
<b>snow</b>	water vapour from the sky that falls as white flakes and covers the ground
<b>star</b>	a bright point in the night sky which is a large, distant incandescent body like the sun
<b>the star of Bethlehem</b>	the star that announced the birth of Jesus and guided the wise men to find Him
<b>tinsel</b>	a decoration consisting of thin strips of shiny metal foil, traditionally used at Christmas
<b>turkey</b>	a bird like a large chicken, traditionally eaten at Christmas
<b>white Christmas</b>	a Christmas with snow on the ground
<b>Xmas</b>	abbreviation or informal term for Christmas





### Christmas Expressions

- Merry Christmas!
- Happy Christmas
- Happy New Year!
- Merry Christmas and a Happy New Year!
- Wishing you a prosperous New Year
- All the best for the coming year
- Seasons Greetings!

Weather Vocabulary		
Word	Meaning	Example Sentence
<i>Part of speech</i>		
<b>airconditioner/airconditioning</b> <i>noun</i>	an appliance that cools down the air in a home or building	The <b>airconditioner</b> keeps the office nice and comfortable even when it's very hot outside.
<b>avalanche</b> <i>noun</i>	a dangerous slide of snow down a mountain	The skiers were warned about a possible <b>avalanche</b> .
<b>below freezing</b> <i>preposition/adjective</i>	temperature less than 0 degrees Celsius/(32F)	It's supposed to go <b>below freezing</b> before the weekend.
<b>blizzard</b> <i>noun</i>	a storm with lots of snow and wind	The airplane couldn't take-off because of the <b>blizzard</b> .
<b>boiling hot</b> <i>adjective + noun</i>	common expression for describing a very hot day	It was <b>boiling hot</b> , so we all jumped into the lake.
<b>breeze</b> <i>noun</i>	light wind	Don't bother with a hat. There is always a <b>breeze</b> near the ocean.
<b>Celsius</b> <i>noun</i>	measurement of temperature (0 degrees is freezing/100 is boiling)	In the summer, the average temperature here is 20 degrees

		<b>Celsius.</b>
<b>chilly</b> <i>adjective</i>	cold	It's a bit <b>chilly</b> today, so I think you should wear a coat.
<b>clear</b> <i>adjective</i>	when the sky is blue because no clouds are blocking the sun	On a <b>clear</b> night you can see a lot of stars.
<b>cloud/cloudy</b> <i>noun/adjective</i>	water in the sky that appears as a white or grey mass	It may look <b>cloudy</b> in the morning, but the sun always comes out by afternoon.
<b>cold spell</b> <i>adjective + noun</i>	a period of colder than average weather	They're calling for a <b>cold spell</b> , so we put off our camping trip.
<b>cool</b> <i>adjective</i>	temperature in between warm and cold	The days were boiling hot, but the nights were <b>cool</b> and comfortable for sleeping.
<b>degrees</b> <i>noun</i>	measurement for temperature	I don't feel the heat until it's about forty <b>degrees Celsius</b> outside.
<b>drizzling</b> <i>continuous verb</i>	raining slightly	I think I'll take the dog for a walk. It's only <b>drizzling</b> now.
<b>drought</b> <i>noun</i>	a long period with no rainfall	Forest fires are a serious danger during a <b>drought</b> .
<b>Fahrenheit</b> <i>noun</i>	measurement of temperature (32 degrees is freezing/212 is boiling)	It was 100 degrees <b>Fahrenheit</b> when we got to San Francisco.
<b>flood</b> <i>noun</i>	overflow of rain water	The <b>flood</b> was so bad, our basement was full of water.
 <b>flurries</b> <i>noun</i>	very light snowfall	There are a few <b>flurries</b> but the snow isn't sticking to the roads.
<b>fog/foggy</b> <i>noun/adjective</i>	thick water vapor that blocks one's vision	We couldn't see the bridge because there was too much <b>fog</b> .
<b>forecast</b> <i>noun/verb</i>	the expected weather for the future	According to the 5 day <b>forecast</b> , it's going to rain on our wedding day.
<b>freezing cold</b> <i>adjective + noun</i>	common expression used to describe a very cold day	It was a <b>freezing cold</b> day for the Santa Claus parade.
<b>frost</b> <i>noun</i>	ice crystals on a frozen surface	Some flowers are so strong they can withstand <b>frost</b> .
<b>frostbite</b> <i>noun</i>	a skin condition caused by over exposure to the cold (typically reddish skin with white spots)	I lost my hat while I was skiing, and I ended up with <b>frostbite</b> on my ears.
<b>hail</b> <i>noun</i>	small pieces of ice that fall during a storm	There was so much <b>hail</b> that some of the trailer homes were destroyed.
<b>heat stroke</b> <i>noun</i>	a flu-like condition one can acquire after spending too long in the sun	Bring lots of water and wear a hat to avoid <b>heat stroke</b> in this weather.
<b>heat-wave</b> <i>noun</i>	extremely hot weather that is much higher than average--usually lasts a short time	During the <b>heat-wave</b> we cooled our beds down with ice packs.
<b>humid/humidity</b> <i>adjective/noun</i>	moisture in the air	It feels a lot hotter than it actually is because of the <b>humidity</b> .
<b>hurricane</b> <i>noun</i>	a tropical storm with very strong wind and rain	Half of the buildings on the island were flattened by the <b>hurricane</b> .
<b>icy</b> <i>adjective</i>	slippery because of ice	The roads are <b>icy</b> so please avoid driving down any hills.
<b>lightning</b> <i>noun</i>	electric flash caused by two clouds hitting	The outdoor pool always closes when the lifeguards suspect <b>lightning</b> .
<b>mild</b>	temperature that is warmer than	It's quite <b>mild</b> out so I didn't

<i>adjective</i>	average(in a cold season)	bother with a hat or mittens.
<b>meteorologist</b> <i>noun</i>	a person who studies weather patterns	The <b>meteorologist</b> predicted that the cold spell would be over by now.
<b>minus/negative</b> <i>adjective</i>	indicates that a temperature is below zero	It was <b>minus</b> twenty degrees at the top of the skill hill.
<b>overcast</b> <i>adjective</i>	no sun is visible	The sky is <b>overcast</b> this morning, but the sun is supposed to come out by late afternoon.
<b>partly cloudy</b> <i>adverb + adjective</i>	term often used in a weather forecast to indicate that the skies are sunny and cloudy at the same time	Tomorrow's forecast is <b>partly cloudy</b> with clear skies by nightfall.
<b>precipitation</b> <i>noun</i>	rain or snow that falls on an area	There is very little <b>precipitation</b> in the desert.
<b>puddle</b> <i>noun</i>	collection of rain water	Children love to splash in <b>puddles</b> when they are wearing rubber boots.
<b>rain/raining/rainy</b> <i>noun/continuous verb/adjective</i>	water that falls to earth	My hair is all wet and messy from the <b>rain</b> .
<b>raindrop</b> <i>noun</i>	a single measurement of rain	I love catching <b>raindrops</b> on my tongue.
<b>rainbow</b> <i>noun</i>	a band of colours found in the sky after a rainfall	According to legend you can find a pot of gold at the end of a <b>rainbow</b> .
<b>raining cats and dogs</b> <i>idiom</i>	raining heavily	They cancelled the football game because it was <b>raining cats and dogs</b> .
<b>scorching/a scorcher</b> <i>adjective/noun</i>	extremely hot temperature/a very hot day	It was <b>a scorcher</b> , so the whole family slept in the cool basement.
<b>season</b> <i>noun</i>	time of year characterized by certain weather Winter, Spring, Summer, Fall (or Autumn)	My favorite <b>season</b> is Fall, because I love to watch the leaves changing colours.
<b>shower</b> <i>noun</i>	quick/light rainstorm	They've been calling for <b>showers</b> all week, but so far it's been dry.
<b>sleet(similar to hail)</b> <i>noun</i>	rain that freezes as it falls	All-weather-tires are best if you have to drive in <b>sleet</b> .
<b>slush/slushy</b> <i>noun/adjective</i>	snow on the ground that has been rained on	The snow turned to <b>slush</b> as soon as it started to rain.
<b>smog</b> <i>noun</i>	heavy, dark cloud cover caused by pollution	You really notice the <b>smog</b> downtown in this type of humidity.
<b>snow/snowy/snowing</b> <i>noun/adjective/ continuous verb</i>	frozen water that warms slightly as it falls to earth	It is already <b>snowing</b> up in the mountains, so the ski season should be great this year.
<b>snowstorm</b> <i>noun</i>	large amounts of wind and snow	All of the schools were closed because of the <b>snowstorm</b> .
 <b>sun/sunshine/sunny</b> <i>noun/noun/adjective</i>	the gassy star that warms the earth	We hope to have <b>sunshine</b> on the day of the beach picnic.
<b>sunburn</b> <i>noun</i>	painful red/pink skin caused by being in the sun too long	The bald man got a <b>sunburn</b> on his head.
<b>sunglasses/shades</b> <i>noun</i>	dark eyewear that protects you from the sun	I forgot my <b>shades</b> and I was driving right into the sun.
<b>suntan/tanned</b> <i>noun(also verb)/adjective(also verb)</i>	brown/golden skin caused by long periods of sun exposure	I got a <b>suntan</b> on the cruise, but it has already faded away.
<b>sunscreen/suntan lotion</b> <i>noun</i>	cream that protects your skin from sun damage	Don't forget to reapply your <b>sunscreen</b> when you get out of

		the lake.
<b>temperature</b> <i>noun</i>	how warm or cold the air is	Can you check the <b>temperature</b> before we get dressed for our walk?
 <b>thermometer</b> <i>noun</i>	instrument for measuring the temperature of the air	When I checked the temperature this morning, the <b>thermometer</b> said it was already thirty degrees Celsius.
 <b>thunder/thunderstorm</b> <i>noun</i>	the crashing of clouds (often followed by a strike of lightning and heavy rain)	Let's close all of the windows. It looks like a <b>thunderstorm</b> is coming.
 <b>tornado/cyclone</b> <i>noun</i>	violently spinning windstorm	The <b>tornado</b> picked up everything in its path, including animals and cars.
 <b>umbrella</b> <i>noun</i>	held over one's head and body for rain protection	I always keep an <b>umbrella</b> in my car in case of rain.
<b>UV (ultra violet) rays</b> <i>noun</i>	the damaging rays from the sun	<b>Ultra violet rays</b> can cause skin cancer if you don't wear sunscreen.
<b>wind/windy</b> <i>noun/adjective</i>	blowing air outside	It's too <b>windy</b> to play golf today.
<b>wind chill factor</b> <i>noun</i>	when the wind makes the air feel colder than the actual temperature	It's minus two, but with the <b>wind chill factor</b> it's minus fifteen.

## Numbers

The main units of numbers in English are:

1	10	100	1000	1000000	1000000000
one	ten	hundred	thousand	million	billion

Here is a list of numbers. On the left are normal or "cardinal" numbers. On the right are "ordinal" numbers, which we use to define a thing's position in a series.

Cardinal Number		Ordinal Number	
0	zero, nought		
1	one	<b>1st</b>	<b>first</b>
2	two	<b>2nd</b>	<b>second</b>
3	three	<b>3rd</b>	<b>third</b>
4	four	<b>4th</b>	<b>fourth</b>
5	five	5th	fifth
6	six	6th	sixth
7	seven	7th	seventh
8	eight	8th	eighth
9	nine	9th	ninth
10	ten	10th	tenth
11	eleven	11th	eleventh
12	twelve	12th	twelfth
13	thirteen	13th	thirteenth
14	fourteen	14th	fourteenth
15	fifteen	15th	fifteenth
16	sixteen	16th	sixteenth
17	seventeen	17th	seventeenth
18	eighteen	18th	eighteenth
19	nineteen	19th	nineteenth

20	twenty	20th	twentieth
21	twenty-one	21st	twenty-first
22	twenty-two	22nd	twenty-second
23	twenty-three	23rd	twenty-third
24	twenty-four	24th	twenty-fourth
30	thirty	30th	thirtieth
31	thirty-one	31st	thirty-first
40	forty	40th	fortieth
50	fifty	50th	fiftieth
60	sixty	60th	sixtieth
70	seventy	70th	seventieth
80	eighty	80th	eightieth
90	ninety	90th	ninetieth
100	one hundred	100th	one hundredth
101	one hundred and one	101st	one hundred and first
152	one hundred and fifty-two	152nd	one hundred and fifty-second
200	two hundred	200th	two hundredth
1,000	one thousand	1,000th	one thousandth
1,000,000	one million	1,000,000th	one millionth
1,000,000,000	one billion	1,000,000,000th	one billionth

For numbers in the hundreds, the British usually say "and" but the Americans usually do not say "and":

- British English  
120 = one hundred **and** twenty
- American English  
120 = one hundred twenty

Note that in English, we usually separate the digits of numbers over 999 with a comma (,). We count 3 digits from the **right** and insert a comma, like this:

		<	-	-	-	<	-	-	-	
					1	,	0	0	0	one thousand
	1	,	0	0	0	,	0	0	0	one million
1	2	,	7	5	0	,	2	0	0	twelve million, seven hundred and fifty thousand, two hundred

We use a point (.) to indicate a decimal number, or to separate dollars from cents, pounds from pennies and so on. Here are some examples:

					0	.	1		=	one tenth or 1/10			
					1	.	0		=	One			
	1	,	0	0	0				=	one thousand			
	1	,	5	0	0	.	7	5	=	one thousand five hundred and three quarters			
					\$	1	.	5	0	=	one dollar and fifty cents		
					\$	7	0	0	.	0	0	=	seven hundred dollars
£	3	,	5	0	0	.	0	1	=	three thousand five hundred pounds and one penny			

## Roman Numbers

The numbers that we normally use (1, 2, 3 etc) are called "Arabic numbers". But we sometimes use another system for writing numbers - "Roman numbers". The Romans used letters of the alphabet to represent numbers, and you will occasionally see this system used for page numbers, clock faces, dates of movies etc.

The letters used in Roman numbers are:

- I = 1
- V = 5
- X = 10
- L = 50
- C = 100
- D = 500
- M = 1000

In general, letters are placed in decreasing order of value, eg XVI = 16. Letters can be repeated one or two times to increase value, eg XX = 20, XXX = 30. Letters cannot be repeated three times, so XXXX is not used for 40. In this case, XL = 40 (50 minus 10).

### Examples

- The Introduction is on page vii.  
= The Introduction is on

1	I	i	10	X	x	50	L	l
2	II	ii	11	XI	xi	60	LX	lx
3	III	iii	12	XII	xii	70	LXX	lxx
4	IV	iv	13	XIII	xiii	80	LXXX	lxxx
5	V	v	14	XIV	xiv	90	XC	xc
6	VI	vi	15	XV	xv	100	C	c
7	VII	vii	16	XVI	xvi	200	CC	cc
8	VIII	viii	17	XVII	xvii	300	CCC	ccc
9	IX	ix	18	XVIII	xviii	400	CD	cd
			19	XIX	xix	500	D	d
			20	XX	xx	1000	M	m
			21	XXI	xxi			
			22	XXII	xxii			
			23	XXIII	xxiii			
			30	XXX	xxx			
			40	XL	xl			

<p>page 7.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>© MCMXCVII EnglishClub.com = © 1997 EnglishClub.com</li> </ul>	
--	--

**Time**

We measure time mainly with seconds, minutes, hours, days, weeks, months and years:

1000 milliseconds	=	1 second
60 seconds	=	1 minute
60 minutes	=	1 hour
24 hours	=	1 day
7 days	=	1 week
28, 29, 30 or 31 days	=	1 month
365 or 366 days	=	1 year
12 months	=	1 year
10 years	=	1 decade
100 years	=	1 century
1000 years	=	1 millennium

## Telling the Time

### Asking the time

Here are some phrases you can use when you want to know the time:

- What's the time?
- What time is it?
- Have you got the right time?
- What time do you make it?

### Telling the time

To tell someone what the time is, we can say "The time is..." or, more usually, "It's...". Here is a typical dialogue:

**Question:** What's the time, please?

**Answer:** It's three o'clock.

The chart on the right shows you two different ways to tell someone what the time is.

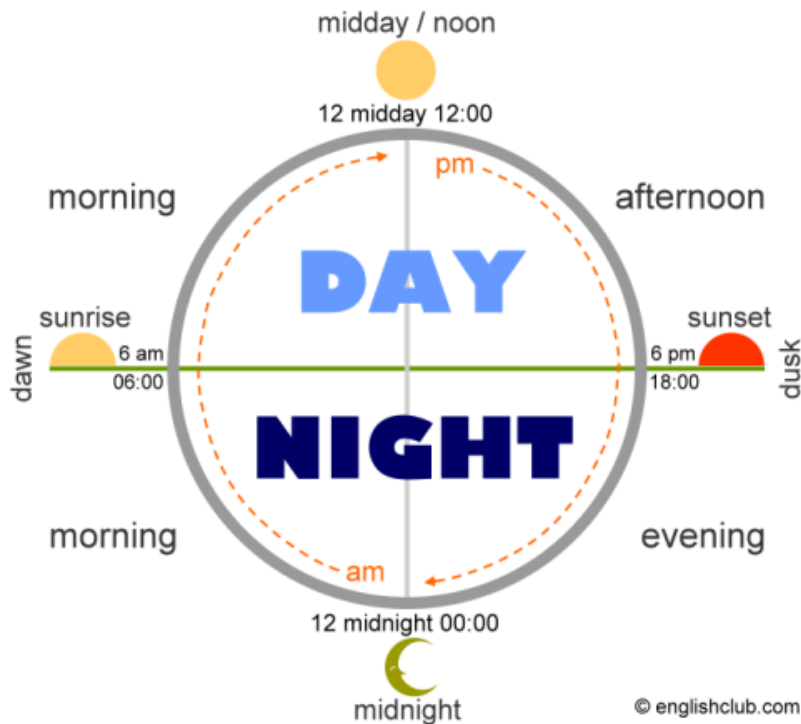
	It's...	It's...
3.00	three o'clock	three
3.02	<i>just gone three o'clock</i>	three oh two
3.03	three <i>minutes</i> past three	three oh three
3.05	five past three	three oh five
3.09	nine <i>minutes</i> past three	three oh nine
3.10	ten past three	three ten
3.15	a quarter past three	three fifteen
3.20	twenty past three	three twenty
3.21	twenty-one <i>minutes</i> past three	three twenty-one
3.25	twenty-five past three	three twenty-five
3.30	half past three	three thirty
3.35	twenty-five to four	three thirty-five
3.40	twenty to four	three forty
3.45	a quarter to four	three forty-five
3.50	ten to four	three fifty
3.55	five to four	three fifty-five
3.57	three <i>minutes</i> to four	three fifty-seven
3.58	<i>nearly four o'clock</i>	three fifty-eight
4.00	four o'clock	four

## Day and Night

There are 24 hours in a day. The day is divided into "day(time)" and "night(-time)". Daytime is from sunrise (this varies, but we can say approximately 6am) to sunset (we can say approximately 6pm). Night-time is from sunset to sunrise.

Every day starts precisely at midnight. AM (Ante-Meridiem = before noon) starts **just after** midnight. PM (Post-Meridiem=after noon) starts **just after** noon. This means that 12am and 12pm have no meaning.

This diagram shows the cycle of a 24-hour day and the words we use to describe its parts. The day starts at midnight (at the bottom of the diagram).



The word **day** can have two meanings:  
 1. the 24 hours between one midnight and the next  
 2. the time between sunrise and sunset (as distinct from **night**)

### Days of the Week

Notice that "weekdays" and "days of the week" are not the same. "Days of the week" are all 7 days from Monday to Sunday. "Weekdays" are only the 5 days from Monday to Friday. The "weekend" is Saturday and Sunday.

	Day	Abbreviation	
weekdays	Monday	Mon.	Mo.
	Tuesday	Tue.	Tu.
	Wednesday	Wed.	We.
	Thursday	Thu.	Th.
	Friday	Fri.	Fr.
weekend	Saturday	Sat.	Sa.
	Sunday	Sun.	Su.

## Months of the Year

This list shows the months of the year used in English-speaking countries and many other parts of the world. The list shows the order of the months, starting from January (month 1).

The abbreviations or short forms shown are the most common, but other abbreviations are possible, for example: Ja./Fe./Ma. or J./F./M.

The days column shows the number of days in the month. All months have 30 or 31 days, except for February which has 28 days (29 in a leap year).

The seasons are approximate and depend on latitude. Some parts of the world have only three seasons. The seasons shown here are for the North Temperate Zone (for example North America). In the southern hemisphere, the seasons are reversed.

Every fourth year February has 29 days. This year is a "leap year" and the 29th February is a "leap day". A leap year has 366 days instead of the normal 365.

	Month	Short Form	Days	Season
1	January	Jan.	31	Winter
2	February	Feb.	28	
3	March	Mar.	31	Spring
4	April	Apr.	30	
5	May	May	31	
6	June	Jun.	30	Summer
7	July	Jul.	31	
8	August	Aug.	30	
9	September	Sep.	30	Autumn
10	October	Oct.	31	
11	November	Nov.	30	
12	December	Dec.	31	Winter

## Writing the Date

There are several different ways to write the date in English. They vary from formal to informal, and there are differences between British and American English. The following table shows some typical formats.

Format	British: Day-Month-Year	American: Month-Day-Year
A	the Fourteenth of March, 1999	March the Fourteenth, 1999
B	14th March 1999	March 14th, 1999
C	14 March 1999	March 14, 1999
D	14/3/1999	3/14/1999
E	14/3/99	3/14/99
F	14/03/99	03/14/99

Note: which format to use is a question of formality, politeness and personal choice. Generally, the longer formats, such as B or C, are more polite (since they show more respect for the reader). Shorter formats, such as D or E, are used in less formal situations, for example a memo, a letter between friends or an impersonal business letter. Format F is rather official and is typically seen on an invoice or an official or technical document. Format A is extremely formal and mainly used on printed items, for example a wedding invitation. The numerical formats may use a full stop (.) or hyphen (-) instead of a slash (/), for example: 14.3.1999 or 03-14-99

Note that another format exists which writes the date numerically in the order Year-Month-Day, for example: 1999/03/14. This is rare in British or American English and used mainly in very official or technical documents.

<b>Months</b>			
Number	Name	Abbreviations	
1	January	Jan	J
2	February	Feb	F
3	March	Mar	M
4	April	Apr	A
5	May	May	M
6	June	Jun	J
7	July	Jul	J
8	August	Aug	A
9	September	Sep	S
10	October	Oct	O
11	November	Nov	N
12	December	Dec	D

In English, months are correctly written with an initial capital: **J**anuary, **F**ebruary...

<b>Days of the Month</b>	
1st	first
2nd	second
3rd	third
4th	fourth
5th	fifth
6th	sixth
7th	seventh
8th	eighth
9th	ninth
10th	tenth
11th	eleventh
12th	twelfth
13th	thirteenth
14th	fourteenth
15th	fifteenth
16th	sixteenth
17th	seventeenth
18th	eighteenth
19th	nineteenth
20th	twentieth
21st	twenty-first
22nd	twenty-second
23rd	twenty-third
24th	twenty-fourth
25th	twenty-fifth
26th	twenty-sixth
27th	twenty-seventh
28th	twenty-eighth
29th	twenty-ninth
30th	thirtieth
31st	thirty-first

## Weight

"Weight" tells us how heavy something is (or how much it weighs). There are basically two systems in use in English-speaking countries.

### Metric Weights

The metric system is used in many countries of the world.

		Abbreviation	British Equivalent
1000 milligrams	<b>1 gram</b>	<b>g</b>	0.035 oz
1000 grams	<b>1 kilogram</b>	<b>kg</b>	2.21 lb
1000 kilograms	<b>1 tonne</b>	<b>t</b>	0.98 tons

### British/US Weights

The British and US systems are the same except where shown.

			Abbreviation	Metric Equivalent
	16 drams	<b>1 ounce</b>	<b>oz</b>	28.35 g
	16 ounces	<b>1 pound</b>	<b>lb</b>	0.454 kg
	14 pounds	<b>1 stone</b>	<b>st</b>	6.35 kg
<b>British</b>	8 stones	<b>1 hundredweight</b>	<b>cwt</b>	50.8 kg
	20 hundredweight	<b>1 ton</b>	<b>t</b>	1,016 kg
<b>US</b>	100 pounds	<b>1 (short) hundredweight</b>	<b>cwt</b>	45.36 kg
	2000 pounds	<b>1 (short) ton</b>	<b>t</b>	907.18 kg

## Continents

A continent is one of the world's main continuous pieces of land. (The word continent comes from the Latin *terra continens*, meaning "continuous land".)

Unfortunately, even the experts cannot agree on how many continents there are:

- **7 Continents:** Africa, Antarctica, Asia, Europe, North America, Oceania, South America
- **6 Continents:** Africa, Antarctica, Eurasia, North America, Oceania, South America
- **6 Continents:** Africa, America, Antarctica, Asia, Europe, Oceania
- **5 Continents:** Africa, America, Antarctica, Eurasia, Oceania
- **4 Continents:** Eurafasia, America, Antarctica, Oceania

Curiously, we have a word for somebody who comes from Mars (a Martian), but we have no word for somebody who comes from Antarctica.

This chart lists what is probably the most widely-accepted number of continents (7), and shows the associated adjective and the noun used for a person from each continent:

Continent	Adjective	Person
Africa	African	an African
Antarctica	Antarctic	-
Asia	Asian	an Asian
Europe	European	a European
North America	North American	a North American
Oceania	Oceanian	an Oceanian
South America	South American	a South American

"Continent" is a geographical term, not political.

## Countries & Nationality

This chart lists many of the countries or nations in the world, with the following information:

- Name of country
- Adjective used for that country (also describes nationality)
- Noun used for a person from that country

Look at these example sentences:

She comes from France. She is French. Her nationality is French. She is a Frenchwoman. She drives a French car. She speaks French.

Country	Adjective	Person
Afghanistan	Afghan	an Afghan
Albania	Albanian	an Albanian
Algeria	Algerian	an Algerian
Andorra	Andorran	an Andorran
Angola	Angolan	an Angolan
Argentina	Argentinean	an Argentinean
Armenia	Armenian	an Armenian
Australia	Australian	an Australian
Austria	Austrian	an Austrian
Azerbaijan	Azerbaijani	an Azerbaijani
Bahamas	Bahamian	a Bahamian
Bahrain	Bahraini	a Bahraini
Bangladesh	Bangladeshi	a Bangladeshi

Barbados	Barbadian	a Barbadian
Belarus	Belorussian <i>or</i> Byelorussian	a Belorussian <i>or</i> a Byelorussian
Belgium	Belgian	a Belgian
Belize	Belizean	a Belizean
Benin	Beninese	a Beninese
Bhutan	Bhutanese	a Bhutanese
Bolivia	Bolivian	a Bolivian
Bosnia-Herzegovina	Bosnian	a Bosnian
Botswana	Botswanan	a Tswana
Brazil	Brazilian	a Brazilian
Britain	British	a Briton
Brunei	Bruneian	a Bruneian
Bulgaria	Bulgarian	a Bulgarian
Burkina	Burkinese	a Burkinese
Burma ( <i>official name</i> Myanmar)	Burmese	a Burmese
Burundi	Burundian	a Burundian
Cambodia	Cambodian	a Cambodian
Cameroon	Cameroonian	a Cameroonian
Canada	Canadian	a Canadian
Cape Verde Islands	Cape Verdean	a Cape Verdean
Chad	Chadian	a Chadian
Chile	Chilean	a Chilean
China	Chinese	a Chinese
Colombia	Colombian	a Colombian
Congo	Congolese	a Congolese
Costa Rica	Costa Rican	a Costa Rican
Croatia	Croat <i>or</i> Croatian	a Croat <i>or</i> a Croatian
Cuba	Cuban	a Cuban
Cyprus	Cypriot	a Cypriot
Czech Republic	Czech	a Czech
Denmark	Danish	a Dane
Djibouti	Djiboutian	a Djiboutian
Dominica	Dominican	a Dominican
Dominican Republic	Dominican	a Dominican
Ecuador	Ecuadorian	an Ecuadorian
Egypt	Egyptian	an Egyptian
El Salvador	Salvadorian	a Salvadorian
England	English	an Englishman, an Englishwoman
Eritrea	Eritrean	an Eritrean
Estonia	Estonian	an Estonian
Ethiopia	Ethiopian	an Ethiopian
Fiji	Fijian	a Fijian
Finland	Finnish	a Finn
France	French	a Frenchman, a Frenchwoman
Gabon	Gabonese	a Gabonese
Gambia, the	Gambian	a Gambian
Georgia	Georgian	a Georgian
Germany	German	a German
Ghana	Ghanaian	a Ghanaian
Greece	Greek	a Greek
Grenada	Grenadian	a Grenadian
Guatemala	Guatemalan	a Guatemalan
Guinea	Guinean	a Guinean
Guyana	Guyanese	a Guyanese
Haiti	Haitian	a Haitian
Holland ( <i>also</i> Netherlands)	Dutch	a Dutchman, a Dutchwoman
Honduras	Honduran	a Honduran
Hungary	Hungarian	a Hungarian

Iceland	Icelandic	an Icelander
India	Indian	an Indian
Indonesia	Indonesian	an Indonesian
Iran	Iranian	an Iranian
Iraq	Iraqi	an Iraqi
Ireland, Republic of	Irish	an Irishman, an Irishwoman
Israel	Israeli	an Israeli
Italy	Italian	an Italian
Jamaica	Jamaican	a Jamaican
Japan	Japanese	a Japanese
Jordan	Jordanian	a Jordanian
Kazakhstan	Kazakh	a Kazakh
Kenya	Kenyan	a Kenyan
Korea <i>see</i> North Korea, South Korea		
Kuwait	Kuwaiti	a Kuwaiti
Laos	Laotian	a Laotian
Latvia	Latvian	a Latvian
Lebanon	Lebanese	a Lebanese
Liberia	Liberian	a Liberian
Libya	Libyan	a Libyan
Liechtenstein	-	a Liechtensteiner
Lithuania	Lithuanian	a Lithuanian
Luxembourg	-	a Luxembourger
Macedonia	Macedonian	a Macedonian
Madagascar	Malagasy <i>or</i> Madagascan	a Malagasy <i>or</i> a Madagascan
Malawi	Malawian	a Malawian
Malaysia	Malaysian	a Malay
Maldives	Maldivian	a Maldivian
Mali	Malian	a Malian
Malta	Maltese	a Maltese
Mauritania	Mauritanian	a Mauritanian
Mauritius	Mauritian	a Mauritian
Mexico	Mexican	a Mexican
Moldova	Moldovan	a Moldovan
Monaco	Monégasque <i>or</i> Monacan	a Monégasque <i>or</i> a Monacan
Mongolia	Mongolian	a Mongolian
Montenegro	Montenegrin	a Montenegrin
Morocco	Moroccan	a Moroccan
Mozambique	Mozambican	a Mozambican
Myanmar <i>see</i> Burma	-	-
Namibia	Namibian	a Namibian
Nepal	Nepalese	a Nepalese
Netherlands, the ( <i>see</i> Holland)	Dutch	a Dutchman, a Dutchwoman, <i>or</i> a Netherlander
New Zealand	-	a New Zealander
Nicaragua	Nicaraguan	a Nicaraguan
Niger	Nigerian	a Nigerian
Nigeria	Nigerian	a Nigerian
North Korea	North Korean	a North Korean
Norway	Norwegian	a Norwegian
Oman	Omani	an Omani
Pakistan	Pakistani	a Pakistani
Panama	Panamanian	a Panamanian
Papua New Guinea	Papua New Guinean <i>or</i> Guinean	a Papua New Guinean <i>or</i> a Guinean
Paraguay	Paraguayan	a Paraguayan
Peru	Peruvian	a Peruvian
the Philippines	Philippine	a Filipino
Poland	Polish	a Pole

Portugal	Portuguese	a Portuguese
Qatar	Qatari	a Qatari
Romania	Romanian	a Romanian
Russia	Russian	a Russian
Rwanda	Rwandan	a Rwandan
Saudi Arabia	Saudi Arabian <i>or</i> Saudi	a Saudi Arabian <i>or</i> a Saudi
Scotland	Scottish	a Scot
Senegal	Senegalese	a Senegalese
Serbia	Serb <i>or</i> Serbian	a Serb <i>or</i> a Serbian
Seychelles, the	Seychellois	a Seychellois
Sierra Leone	Sierra Leonean	a Sierra Leonean
Singapore	Singaporean	a Singaporean
Slovakia	Slovak	a Slovak
Slovenia	Slovene <i>or</i> Slovenian	a Slovene <i>or</i> a Slovenian
Solomon Islands	-	a Solomon Islander
Somalia	Somali	a Somali
South Africa	South African	a South African
South Korea	South Korean	a South Korean
Spain	Spanish	a Spaniard
Sri Lanka	Sri Lankan	a Sri Lankan
Sudan	Sudanese	a Sudanese
Suriname	Surinamese	a Surinamer <i>or</i> a Surinamese
Swaziland	Swazi	a Swazi
Sweden	Swedish	a Swede
Switzerland	Swiss	a Swiss
Syria	Syrian	a Syrian
Taiwan	Taiwanese	a Taiwanese
Tajikistan	Tajik <i>or</i> Tadjik	a Tajik <i>or</i> a Tadjik
Tanzania	Tanzanian	a Tanzanian
Thailand	Thai	a Thai
Togo	Togolese	a Togolese
Trinidad and Tobago	Trinidadian and Tobagan	a Trinidadian and Tobagan
Tunisia	Tunisian	a Tunisian
Turkey	Turkish	a Turk
Turkmenistan	Turkmen <i>or</i> Turkoman	a Turkmen <i>or</i> a Turkoman
Tuvalu	Tuvaluan	a Tuvaluan
Uganda	Ugandan	a Ugandan
Ukraine	Ukrainian	a Ukrainian
United Arab Emirates (UAE)	-	-
United Kingdom (UK)	British	a Briton
United States of America (USA)	-	a citizen of the USA
Uruguay	Uruguayan	a Uruguayan
Uzbekistan	Uzbek	an Uzbek
Vanuata	Vanuatuan	a Vanuatuan
Vatican City	-	-
Venezuela	Venezuelan	a Venezuelan
Vietnam	Vietnamese	a Vietnamese
Wales	Welsh	a Welshman, a Welshwoman
Western Samoa	Western Samoan	a Western Samoan
Yemen	Yemeni	a Yemeni
Yugoslavia	Yugoslav	a Yugoslav
Zaire	Zairean	a Zairean
Zambia	Zambian	a Zambian
Zimbabwe	Zimbabwean	a Zimbabwean

## World Currencies

Here are the names and codes for most of the currencies in use today.  
Currencies marked \* have been replaced by the European Euro.

Code	Basic Currency Unit	Fractional Unit (1:100)
AFA	Afghan afghani	pul
DZD	Algerian dinar	centime
USD	American dollar	cent
ARP	Argentinian peso	centavo
AUD	Australian dollar	cent
ATS*	Austrian schilling	groschen
BSD	Bahamian dollar	cent
BEF*	Belgian franc	centime
BRR	Brazilian real	centavo
GBP	British pound	penny
BGL	Bulgarian lev	stotinka
CAD	Canadian dollar	cent
CLP	Chilean peso	centesimo
CNY	Chinese yuan renminbi	fen
CYP	Cyprus pound	cent
CSK	Czech koruna	haler
DKK	Danish krone	øre
NLG*	Dutch guilder	cent
EGP	Egyptian pound	piaster
EUR	European Euro	cent
FIM*	Finnish markka	penni
FRF*	French franc	centime
DEM*	German mark	pfennig
GRD*	Greek drachma	lepton
HKD	Hong Kong dollar	cent
HUF	Hungarian forint	fillér
INR	Indian rupee	paisa
IDR	Indonesian rupiah	sen
IEP*	Irish punt	penny
ILS	Israeli shekel	agora
ITL*	Italian lira	centesimo
JMD	Jamaican dollar	cent
JPY	Japanese yen	sen (not used)
LBP	Lebanese pound	piaster
LUF*	Luxembourg franc	centime
MYR	Malaysian ringgit	sen
MXP	Mexican peso	centavo
NZD	New Zealand dollar	cent
NOK	Norwegian krone	øre
PKR	Pakistani rupee	paisa
PHP	Philippine peso	centavo
PLZ	Polish zloty	grosz
PTE*	Portugese escudo	centavo
ROL	Romanian leu	ban
SUR	Russian ruble	kopeck
SAR	Saudi Arabian riyal	halala
SGD	Singapore dollar	cent
ZAR	South African rand	cent
KRW	South Korean won	jeon
ESP*	Spanish peseta	centimo
SEK	Swedish krona	øre

CHF	Swiss franc	centime
TWD	Taiwan dollar	cent
THB	Thai baht	satang
TTD	Trinidad & Tobago dollar	cent
TRL	Turkish lira	kurus
VEB	Venezuelan bolivar	centimo
VND	Vietnamese dong	xu

### Prepositions of Place: at, in, on

In general, we use:

- **at** for a POINT
- **in** for an ENCLOSED SPACE
- **on** for a SURFACE

At	in	on
<b>POINT</b>	<b>ENCLOSED SPACE</b>	<b>SURFACE</b>
at the corner	in the garden	on the wall
at the bus stop	in London	on the ceiling
at the door	in France	on the door
at the top of the page	in a box	on the cover
at the end of the road	in my pocket	on the floor
at the entrance	in my wallet	on the carpet
at the crossroads	in a building	on the menu
at the entrance	in a car	on a page

Look at these examples:

- Jane is waiting for you **at** the bus stop.
- The shop is **at** the end of the street.
- My plane stopped **at** Dubai and Hanoi and arrived **in** Bangkok two hours late.
- When will you arrive **at** the office?
- Do you work **in** an office?
- I have a meeting **in** New York.
- Do you live **in** Japan?
- Jupiter is **in** the Solar System.
- The author's name is **on** the cover of the book.
- There are no prices **on** this menu.
- You are standing **on** my foot.
- There was a "no smoking" sign **on** the wall.
- I live **on** the 7th floor **at** 21 Oxford Street **in** London.

Notice the use of the prepositions of place **at**, **in** and **on** in these standard expressions:

at	in	on
at home	in a car	on a bus
at work	in a taxi	on a train
at school	in a helicopter	on a plane
at university	in a boat	on a ship
at college	in a lift (elevator)	on a bicycle, on a motorbike
at the top	in the newspaper	on a horse, on an elephant
at the bottom	in the sky	on the radio, on television
at the side	in a row	on the left, on the right
at reception	in Oxford Street	on the way

**Prepositions of Time:  
at, in, on**

We use:

- **at** for a PRECISE TIME
- **in** for MONTHS, YEARS, CENTURIES and LONG PERIODS
- **on** for DAYS and DATES

<b>at</b>	<b>in</b>	<b>on</b>
<b>PRECISE TIME</b>	<b>MONTHS, YEARS, CENTURIES and LONG PERIODS</b>	<b>DAYS and DATES</b>
at 3 o'clock	in May	on Sunday
at 10.30am	in summer	on Tuesdays
at noon	in the summer	on 6 March
at dinnertime	in 1990	on 25 Dec. 2010
at bedtime	in the 1990s	on Christmas Day
at sunrise	in the next century	on Independence Day
at sunset	in the Ice Age	on my birthday
at the moment	in the past/future	on New Year's Eve

Look at these examples:

- I have a meeting **at** 9am.
- The shop closes **at** midnight.
- Jane went home **at** lunchtime.
- In England, it often snows **in** December.
- Do you think we will go to Jupiter **in** the future?
- There should be a lot of progress **in** the next century.
- Do you work **on** Mondays?
- Her birthday is **on** 20 November.
- Where will you be **on** New Year's Day?

Notice the use of the preposition of time **at** in the following standard expressions:

<b>Expression</b>	<b>Example</b>
at night	The stars shine <b>at night</b> .
at the weekend	I don't usually work <b>at the weekend</b> .
at Christmas/Easter	I stay with my family <b>at Christmas</b> .
at the same time	We finished the test <b>at the same time</b> .
at present	He's not home <b>at present</b> . Try later.

Notice the use of the prepositions of time **in** and **on** in these common expressions:

<b>in</b>	<b>on</b>
in the morning	on Tuesday morning
in the mornings	on Saturday mornings
in the afternoon(s)	on Sunday afternoons
in the evening(s)	on Monday evening

When we say **last, next, every, this** we do not also use **at, in, on**.

- I went to London **last** June. (*not in last* June)
- He's coming back **next** Tuesday. (*not on next* Tuesday)
- I go home **every** Easter. (*not at every* Easter)
- We'll call you **this** evening. (*not in this* evening)

## REFERENCES

- Adamson, D. International Hotel English, New York, Prentice Hall International, 1989
- Antonof, Michael Presentations that Persuade. Personal Computing, 27 July 1990
- Ashley, A. A Handbook of Commercial Correspondence, Oxford, Oxford University Press, 1992
- Barghiel, V. et al. Practice in English Grammar, Ed. Bucuresti, Ed. Lucman, 2003
- Chiriacescu, A. et al. Corespondenta de afaceri in limbile romana si engleza Bucuresti, Teora, 1994
- Colin, P. Dictionary of hotels, tourism and catering management, British Library, Peter Collins Publishing, 1994
- Cotton, D. Robbin, S. Business Class, Harlow, Longman, 1997
- Cotton, D. et al. Marker Leader, Harlow, Longman, 2000
- Crocus, A. Tourism and Hospitality Industry Worldwide, Bucuresti, Ed. Sylvi, 1997
- Davidmann, Manfred Roles of Managers under Different Styles of Management in Marketing Definitions: A Glossary Of Marketing Terms. Chicago: American Marketing Association, 1960
- Halt, J.E. The Language of Hotels in English, New York, Prentice Hall International, 1990
- Lundberg, D. The Hotel and Restaurant Business, New York, John Wiley&Sons Ltd., 1994
- Matthews, Candace. Business Interactions, Regents/Prentice Hall: Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey, 1987
- Nicolae, M et al. Commercial Communication, Bucuresti, CISON, 2002
- Prelipceanu, Cristina English for Tourism and Hospitality Industry, editura Universitara, Bucuresti, 2004
- Powell, M. Business Matters, HOVE, Language Teaching Publications, 1996
- Stancioiu, A. Dictionar de terminologie turistica, Bucuresti, Ed. Economica, 1991
- Stanciulescu, G.(coord.) Lexicon de termeni turistici, Bucuresti, Oscar Print, 2002
- Srutt, P. Business English Usage, Harlow, Longman, 1992
- Strutt, P. Engleza pentru turism in 1000 de cuvinte, Bucuresti, Teora, 1998
- Xxx Dictionar turistic international (traducere S. Negrut), Bucuresti, Ed. Sport-Turism, 1980
- Xxx The Macmillan Dictionary of Modern Economics, London, the Macmillan Press, 1985
- Xxx Reviews: The Economist, Time
- How the European Union Works. A Citizen's Guide to the EU Institutions. European Commission, 2003

**“Limba engleză pentru anul I” is designed for intermediate and upper intermediate learners.**

The aim of the course is to develop integrated communication in English and assist the people who work in horticulture and landscape architecture. It also insists to present ideas clearly, persuasively in the way which will help you to become a more fluent, articulate and confident communicator.